



MegaRaid®  
SAS Software  
User Guide

80-00156-01  
Rev. H  
August 2009

## Revision History

Version and Date	Description of Changes
80-00156-01 Rev. H, July 2009	Documented the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature.
80-00156-01 Rev. G, June 2009	Updated the MegaRAID Storage Manager chapters.
80-00156-01 Rev. F, March 2009	Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility, MegaRAID Storage Manager, and MegaCLI chapters.
80-00156-01 Rev. E, December 2008	Added the overview chapter. Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility, MegaRAID Storage Manager, and MegaCLI chapters.
80-00156-01 Rev. D, April 2008	Updated the RAID overview section. Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility and the MegaRAID Storage Manager. Updated the MegaCLI commands.
80-00156-01 Rev. C, July 2007 Version 2.	Updated operating system support for MegaCLI.
80-00156-01 Rev. B, June 2007 Version 2.0	Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility and the MegaRAID Storage Manager. Updated the MegaCLI commands. Added the RAID introduction chapter.
80-00156-01 Rev. A, August 2006 Version 1.1	Corrected the procedure for creating RAID 10 and RAID 50 drive groups in the WebBIOS Configuration Utility.
DB15-000339-00, December 2005 Version 1.0	Initial release of this document.

LSI and the LSI logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of LSI Corporation or its subsidiaries. All other brand and product names may be trademarks of their respective companies.

**!LIST ANY OTHER REQUIRED TRADEMARKS! REMOVE THIS STATEMENT!**

This preliminary document describes a preproduction product and contains information that may change substantially for any final commercial release of the product. LSI Corporation makes no express or implied representation or warranty as to the accuracy, quality, or completeness of information contained in this document, and neither the release of this document nor any information included in it obligates LSI Corporation to make a commercial release of the product. LSI Corporation reserves the right to make changes to the product(s) or information disclosed herein at any time without notice. LSI Corporation does not assume any responsibility or liability arising out of the application or use of any product or service described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by LSI Corporation; nor does the purchase, lease, or use of a product or service from LSI Corporation convey a license under any patent rights, copyrights, trademark rights, or any other of the intellectual property rights of LSI Corporation or of third parties.

**FOR ALL DOCUMENTS UNDER NDA INCLUDE THE PARAGRAPH BELOW: REMOVE THIS RED TEXT**

This document contains proprietary information of LSI Corporation. The information contained herein is not to be used by or disclosed to third parties without the express written permission of LSI Corporation.

**FOR INTERNAL DOCUMENTS INCLUDE THE PARAGRAPH BELOW: REMOVE THIS RED TEXT**

This document contains proprietary information of LSI Corporation. The information contained herein is not to be used by or disclosed to third parties without the express written permission of LSI Corporation.

**Corporate Headquarters**  
Milpitas, CA  
800-372-2447

**Email**  
globalsupport@lsi.com

**Website**  
www.lsi.com

Document Number: 80-00156-01 Rev. H

# Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1: Overview</b>	9
1.1 SAS Technology	9
1.2 Serial-attached SCSI Device Interface	10
1.3 Serial ATA II Features	10
1.4 Solid State Drive Features	11
1.4.1 Solid State Drive Guard	11
1.5 Dimmer Switch Feature	11
1.6 UEFI 2.0 Support	12
1.7 Configuration Scenarios	12
1.7.1 Valid Drive Mix Configurations with HDDs and SSDs	13
1.8 Technical Support	14
<b>Chapter 2: Introduction to RAID</b>	15
2.1 RAID Description	15
2.2 RAID Benefits	15
2.3 RAID Functions	15
2.4 Components and Features	15
2.4.1 Physical Array	16
2.4.2 Virtual Drive	16
2.4.3 RAID Drive Group	16
2.4.4 Fault Tolerance	16
2.4.5 Consistency Check	17
2.4.6 Copyback	17
2.4.7 Background Initialization	18
2.4.8 Patrol Read	18
2.4.9 Disk Striping	19
2.4.10 Disk Mirroring	19
2.4.11 Parity	20
2.4.12 Disk Spanning	20
2.4.13 Hot Spares	21
2.4.14 Disk Rebuilds	23
2.4.15 Rebuild Rate	23
2.4.16 Hot Swap	23
2.4.17 Drive States	23
2.4.18 Virtual Drive States	24
2.4.19 Enclosure Management	24
2.5 RAID Levels	25
2.5.1 Summary of RAID Levels	25
2.5.2 Selecting a RAID Level	25
2.5.3 RAID 0	26
2.5.4 RAID 1	26
2.5.5 RAID 5	27
2.5.6 RAID 6	28
2.5.7 RAID 00	29
2.5.8 RAID 10	30
2.5.9 RAID 50	31
2.5.10 RAID 60	32
2.6 RAID Configuration Strategies	33

2.6.1 Maximizing Fault Tolerance .....	34
2.6.2 Maximizing Performance .....	35
2.6.3 Maximizing Storage Capacity .....	36
2.7 RAID Availability .....	37
2.7.1 RAID Availability Concept .....	37
2.8 Configuration Planning .....	38
2.9 Number of Drives .....	38
2.9.1 Drive Group Purpose .....	38
<b>Chapter 3: Full Disk Encryption .....</b>	<b>41</b>
3.1 Overview .....	41
3.2 Purpose .....	41
3.3 Terminology .....	41
3.4 Workflow .....	42
3.4.1 Enable Security .....	42
3.4.2 Change Security .....	43
3.4.3 Create Secure Virtual Drives .....	43
3.4.4 Import a Foreign Configuration .....	44
3.5 Instant Secure Erase .....	44
<b>Chapter 4: WebBIOS Configuration Utility .....</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1 Overview .....	47
4.2 Starting the WebBIOS CU .....	47
4.3 WebBIOS CU Main Screen Options .....	48
4.4 Creating a Storage Configuration .....	50
4.4.1 Selecting the Configuration with the Configuration Wizard .....	50
4.4.2 Using Automatic Configuration .....	51
4.4.3 Using Manual Configuration .....	52
4.5 Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options .....	87
4.5.1 Enabling the Security Key Identifier, Security Key, and Passphrase .....	87
4.5.2 Changing the Security Key Identifier, Security Key, and Pass Phrase .....	91
4.5.3 Disabling the Drive Security Settings .....	97
4.5.4 Importing Foreign Configurations .....	99
4.6 Viewing and Changing Device Properties .....	99
4.6.1 Viewing and Changing Controller Properties .....	99
4.6.2 Viewing and Changing Virtual Drive Properties .....	103
4.6.3 Viewing Drive Properties .....	104
4.6.4 Viewing and Changing Battery Backup Unit Information .....	106
4.7 Viewing System Event Information .....	108
4.8 Managing Configurations .....	109
4.8.1 Running a Consistency Check .....	110
4.8.2 Deleting a Virtual Drive .....	110
4.8.3 Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration .....	110
4.8.4 Migrating the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive .....	113
<b>Chapter 5: MegaRAID Command Tool .....</b>	<b>115</b>
5.1 Product Overview .....	115
5.2 Novell NetWare, SCO, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS Operating System Support .....	116
5.3 Command Line Abbreviations and Conventions .....	117
5.3.1 Abbreviations Used in the Command Line .....	117

5.3.2 Conventions .....	117
5.4 Controller Property-Related Options .....	118
5.4.1 Display Controller Properties .....	118
5.4.2 Display Number of Controllers Supported .....	118
5.4.3 Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild .....	119
5.4.4 Flush Controller Cache .....	119
5.4.5 Set Controller Properties .....	119
5.4.6 Display Specified Controller Properties .....	121
5.4.7 Set Factory Defaults .....	121
5.4.8 Set SAS Address .....	121
5.4.9 Set Time and Date on Controller .....	121
5.4.10 Display Time and Date on Controller .....	122
5.5 Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties .....	122
5.5.1 Set Patrol Read Options .....	122
5.5.2 Set Patrol Read Delay Interval .....	122
5.6 BIOS-Related Properties .....	123
5.6.1 Set or Display Bootable Virtual Drive ID .....	123
5.6.2 Select BIOS Status Options .....	123
5.7 Battery Backup Unit-Related Properties .....	123
5.7.1 Display BBU Information .....	123
5.7.2 Display BBU Status Information .....	124
5.7.3 Display BBU Capacity .....	125
5.7.4 Display BBU Design Parameters .....	125
5.7.5 Display Current BBU Properties .....	126
5.7.6 Start BBU Learning Cycle .....	126
5.7.7 Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode .....	126
5.7.8 Set BBU Properties .....	127
5.8 Options for Displaying Logs Kept at Firmware Level .....	127
5.8.1 Event Log Management .....	127
5.8.2 Set BBU Terminal Logging .....	128
5.9 Configuration-Related Options .....	128
5.9.1 Create a RAID Drive Group from All Unconfigured Good Drives .....	128
5.9.2 Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration .....	130
5.9.3 Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration .....	131
5.9.4 Clear the Existing Configuration .....	131
5.9.5 Save the Configuration on the Controller .....	131
5.9.6 Restore the Configuration Data from File .....	132
5.9.7 Manage Foreign Configuration Information .....	132
5.9.8 Delete Specified Virtual Drive(s) .....	133
5.9.9 Display the Free Space .....	133
5.10 Virtual Drive-Related Options .....	133
5.10.1 Display Virtual Drive Information .....	133
5.10.2 Change the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters .....	134
5.10.3 Display the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters .....	134
5.10.4 Manage Virtual Drives Initialization .....	135
5.10.5 Manage a Consistency Check .....	135
5.10.6 Manage a Background Initialization .....	136
5.10.7 Perform a Virtual Drive Reconstruction .....	136
5.10.8 Display Information about Virtual Drives and Drives .....	137
5.10.9 Display the Number of Virtual Drives .....	137
5.11 Drive-Related Options .....	137
5.11.1 Display Drive Information .....	137

5.11.2 Set the Drive State to Online .....	137
5.11.3 Set the Drive State to Offline .....	138
5.11.4 Change the Drive State to Unconfigured Good .....	138
5.11.5 Change Drive State .....	138
5.11.6 Manage a Drive Initialization .....	139
5.11.7 Rebuild a Drive .....	139
5.11.8 Locate the Drive(s) and Activate LED .....	139
5.11.9 Mark the Configured Drive as Missing .....	140
5.11.10 Display the Drives in Missing Status .....	140
5.11.11 Replace the Configured Drives and Start an Automatic Rebuild .....	140
5.11.12 Prepare the Unconfigured Drive for Removal .....	140
5.11.13 Display Total Number of Drives .....	141
5.11.14 Display List of Physical Devices .....	141
5.11.15 Download Firmware to the Physical Devices .....	141
5.12 Enclosure-Related Options .....	141
5.13 Flashing the Firmware .....	141
5.13.1 Flash the Firmware with the ROM File .....	142
5.13.2 Flash the Firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM File .....	142
5.14 SAS Topology .....	142
5.15 Diagnostic-Related Options .....	143
5.15.1 Start Controller Diagnostics .....	143
5.15.2 Start Battery Test .....	143
5.15.3 Start NVRAM Diagnostic .....	143
5.16 Miscellaneous Options .....	143
5.16.1 Display the MegaCLI Version .....	143
5.16.2 Display Help for MegaCLI .....	144
<b>Chapter 6: MegaRAID Storage Manager Overview and Installation .....</b>	<b>145</b>
6.1 Overview .....	145
6.1.1 Creating Storage Configurations .....	145
6.1.2 Monitoring Storage Devices .....	145
6.1.3 Maintaining Storage Configurations .....	145
6.2 Hardware and Software Requirements .....	145
6.3 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager .....	146
6.3.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software on Microsoft Windows .....	146
6.3.2 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Linux .....	150
6.3.3 Linux Error Messages .....	151
6.4 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on VMWare .....	151
6.4.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare Classic .....	151
6.4.2 Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare .....	151
6.4.3 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Support on the VMWare ESX Operating System .....	152
6.4.4 Limitations .....	156
6.4.5 Running MSM on VMWare ESX 3.5i U2 .....	159
6.5 Installing and Configuring a CIM Provider .....	160
6.5.1 Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Linux .....	160
6.5.2 Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Windows .....	161
6.6 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent .....	162
6.6.1 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Linux .....	162
6.6.2 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Solaris .....	163
6.6.3 Installing an SNMP Agent on Windows .....	166
6.7 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on Solaris 10 .....	167
6.7.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10 .....	167

6.7.2 Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10 .....	167
<b>Chapter 7: MegaRAID Storage Manager Window and Menus .....</b>	<b>169</b>
7.1 Starting MegaRAID Storage Manager Software .....	169
7.2 MegaRAID Storage Manager Window .....	171
7.2.1 Physical/Logical View Panel .....	172
7.2.2 Properties/Operations Panels .....	173
7.2.3 Event Log Panel .....	174
7.2.4 Menu Bar .....	174
<b>Chapter 8: Configuration .....</b>	<b>177</b>
8.1 Creating a New Storage Configuration .....	177
8.1.1 Selecting Virtual Drive Settings .....	177
8.1.2 Creating a Virtual Drive Using Simple Configuration .....	178
8.1.3 Creating a Virtual Drive Using Advanced Configuration .....	182
8.2 Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options .....	189
8.2.1 Enabling Drive Security .....	189
8.2.2 Changing the Security Key Identifier, Security Key, and Pass Phrase .....	195
8.2.3 Disabling Drive Security .....	200
8.2.4 Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration .....	202
8.3 Adding Hot Spare Drives .....	204
8.4 Changing Adjustable Task Rates .....	205
8.5 Changing Power Settings .....	207
8.6 Changing Virtual Drive Properties .....	207
8.7 Changing a Virtual Drive Configuration .....	208
8.7.1 Accessing the Modify Drive Group Wizard .....	208
8.7.2 Adding a Drive or Drives to a Configuration .....	210
8.7.3 .....	Removing a Drive from a Configuration 211
8.7.4 Changing the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive .....	211
8.8 Deleting a Virtual Drive .....	212
8.9 Saving a Storage Configuration to Drive .....	212
8.10 Clearing a Storage Configuration from a Controller .....	212
8.11 Adding a Saved Storage Configuration .....	212
<b>Chapter 9: Monitoring System Events and Storage Devices .....</b>	<b>215</b>
9.1 Monitoring System Events .....	215
9.2 Configuring Alert Notifications .....	216
9.2.1 Setting Alert Delivery Methods .....	218
9.2.2 Changing Alert Delivery Methods for Individual Events .....	219
9.2.3 Changing the Severity Level for Individual Events .....	220
9.2.4 Entering or Editing the Sender Email Address and SMTP Server .....	221
9.2.5 Authenticating a Server .....	222
9.2.6 Saving Backup Configurations .....	222
9.2.7 Loading Backup Configurations .....	223
9.2.8 Adding Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications .....	223
9.2.9 Testing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications .....	224
9.2.10 Removing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications .....	224
9.3 Monitoring Controllers .....	225
9.4 Monitoring Drives .....	226

- 9.5 Running a Patrol Read ..... 227
- 9.6 Monitoring Virtual Drives ..... 229
- 9.7 Monitoring Enclosures ..... 231
- 9.8 Monitoring Battery Backup Units ..... 232
  - 9.8.1 Battery Learn Cycle ..... 233
- 9.9 Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes ..... 234
  
- Chapter 10: Maintaining and Managing Storage Configurations ..... 235**
  - 10.1 Initializing a Virtual Drive ..... 235
  - 10.2 Running a Consistency Check ..... 235
  - 10.3 Scanning for New Drives ..... 236
  - 10.4 Rebuilding a Drive ..... 236
  - 10.5 Making a Drive Offline or Missing ..... 237
  - 10.6 Upgrading the Firmware ..... 237
  
- Appendix A: Events and Messages ..... 239**
  - A.1 Error Levels ..... 239
  - A.2 Event Messages ..... 239
  
- Appendix B: Glossary ..... 251**

# Chapter 1

## Overview

This chapter provides an overview of this guide, which documents the utilities used to configure, monitor, and maintain MegaRAID® Serial-attached SCSI (SAS) RAID controllers with RAID control capabilities and the storage-related devices connected to them.

This guide explains how to use the MegaRAID Storage Manager™ software, WebBIOS, and Command Line Interface (CLI). In addition, it documents SAS technology, Serial ATA (SATA) technology, Solid State Disk (SSD) technology, configuration scenarios, and drive types.

### 1.1 SAS Technology

The MegaRAID 6Gb/s SAS RAID controllers are high-performance intelligent PCI Express-to-SCSI/Serial ATA II controllers with RAID control capabilities. MegaRAID 6Gb/s SAS RAID controllers provide reliability, high performance, and fault-tolerant disk subsystem management. They are an ideal RAID solution for the internal storage of workgroup, departmental, and enterprise systems. MegaRAID 6Gb/s SAS RAID controllers offer a cost-effective way to implement RAID in a server.

SAS technology brings a wealth of options and flexibility with the use of SAS devices, Serial ATA (SATA) II devices, and SSD devices within the same storage infrastructure. These devices bring individual characteristics that make each one a more suitable choice depending on your storage needs. MegaRAID gives you the flexibility to combine these two similar technologies on the same controller, within the same enclosure, and in the same virtual drive.

---

**NOTE:** LSI recommends that you carefully assess any decision to mix SAS drives and SATA drives within the same *virtual drives*. Although you can mix drives, LSI strongly discourages the practice. This recommendation applies to both HDDs and SSDs.

---

The MegaRAID 6Gb/s SAS RAID controllers are based on the LSI first-to-market SAS IC technology and proven MegaRAID technology. As second-generation PCI Express RAID controllers, the MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers address the growing demand for increased data throughput and scalability requirements across midrange and enterprise-class server platforms. LSI offers a family of MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers addressing the needs for both internal and external solutions.

The SAS controllers support the ANSI *Serial Attached SCSI standard, version 1.1*. In addition, the controller supports the SATA II protocol defined by the *Serial ATA specification, version 1.0a*. Supporting both the SAS and SATA II interfaces, the SAS controller is a versatile controller that provides the backbone of both server environments and high-end workstation environments.

Each port on the SAS RAID controller supports SAS devices, SATA II devices, or SSD devices using the following protocols:

- SAS Serial SCSI Protocol (SSP), which enables communication with other SAS devices
- SATA II, which enables communication with other SATA II devices
- Serial Management Protocol (SMP), which communicates topology management information directly with an attached SAS expander device
- Serial Tunneling Protocol (STP), which enables communication with a SATA II device through an attached expander

## 1.2 Serial-attached SCSI Device Interface

---

SAS is a serial, point-to-point, enterprise-level device interface that leverages the proven SCSI protocol set. SAS is a convergence of the advantages of SATA II, SCSI, and Fibre Channel, and is the future mainstay of the enterprise and high-end workstation storage markets. SAS offers a higher bandwidth per pin than parallel SCSI, and it improves signal and data integrity.

The SAS interface uses the proven SCSI command set to ensure reliable data transfers, while providing the connectivity and flexibility of point-to-point serial data transfers. The serial transmission of SCSI commands eliminates clock-skew challenges. The SAS interface provides improved performance, simplified cabling, smaller connectors, lower pin count, and lower power requirements when compared to parallel SCSI.

SAS controllers leverage a common electrical and physical connection interface that is compatible with Serial ATA technology. The SAS and SATA II protocols use a thin, 7-wire connector instead of the 68-wire SCSI cable or 26-wire ATA cable. The SAS/SATA II connector and cable are easier to manipulate, allow connections to smaller devices, and do not inhibit airflow. The point-to-point SATA II architecture eliminates inherent difficulties created by the legacy ATA master-slave architecture, while maintaining compatibility with existing ATA firmware.

## 1.3 Serial ATA II Features

---

The SATA bus is a high-speed, internal bus that provides a low pin count, low voltage level bus for device connections between a host controller and a SATA device.

The following list describes the SATA II features of the RAID controllers:

- Supports SATA II data transfers of 3.0 Gbits/s
- Supports STP data transfers of 3.0 Gbits/s
- Provides a serial, point-to-point storage interface
- Simplifies cabling between devices
- Eliminates the master-slave construction used in parallel ATA
- Allows addressing of multiple SATA II targets through an expander
- Allows multiple initiators to address a single target (in a fail-over configuration) through an expander

## 1.4 Solid State Drive Features

---

MegaRAID firmware supports SSD drives attached to MegaRAID SAS controllers. These drives are expected to behave like SATA HDDs or SAS HDDs. The major advantages of SSD drives include:

- High random read speed (because there is no read-write head to move)
- High performance-to-power ratio, as these drives have very low power consumption compared to HDDs
- Low latency
- High mechanical reliability
- Lower weight and size (for low-capacity SSD drives)

The features and operations on SSD drives are the same as for hard disk drives (HDD).

---

**NOTE:** MegaRAID implements support for only those SATA SSD drives which support ATA-8 ACS compliance.

---

You can choose whether to allow a virtual drive to consist of both SSD devices and HDDs. For a virtual drive that consists of SSDs only, you can choose whether to allow SAS SSD drives and SATA SSD drives in that virtual drive. For virtual drives that have both SSDs and HDDs, you can choose whether to mix SAS and SATA HDD drives with SAS and SATA SSD devices in various combinations.

---

**NOTE:** Support for SATA SDD drives applies only to those drives that support ATA-8 ACS compliance.

---

### 1.4.1 Solid State Drive Guard

---

SSDs are known for their reliability and performance. SSD Guard™, a feature that is unique to MegaRAID, increases the reliability of SSDs by automatically copying data from a drive with potential to fail to a designated hot spare or newly inserted drive. Because SSDs are very reliable, non-redundant RAID 0 configurations are much more common than in the past. SSD Guard offers added data protection for RAID 0 configurations.

SSD Guard works by looking for a predictive failure while monitoring the SDD S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology) error log. If errors indicate a SSD failure is imminent, MegaRAID starts a rebuild to preserve the data on the SSD and sends appropriate warning event notifications.

## 1.5 Dimmer Switch Feature

---

Powering and cooling drives represents a major cost for data centers. The new MegaRAID Dimmer™ Switch reduces the power consumption of the devices connected to a MegaRAID controller. This helps to share resources more efficiently and lower costs.

With Dimmer Switch, any unconfigured drive connected to a MegaRAID controller is spun down after 30 minutes of inactivity, reducing its power usage. Spun down drives are spun up automatically when you create a configuration using those drives.

## 1.6 UEFI 2.0 Support

Significant challenges face operating system and platform developers to innovate using the legacy PC-AT BIOS boot environment. These include memory constraints, maintenance challenges, and increased complexities due to a lack of industry-wide standards.

To handle these challenges, the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) was developed to do the following:

- Define a clean interface between operating systems and the hardware platform at boot time.
- Support an architecture-independent mechanism for initializing add-in cards.

UEFI 2.0 provides MegaRAID customers with expanded platform support. The MegaRAID UEFI 2.0 driver, a boot service device driver, handles block IO requests and SCSI pass-through commands (SPT), and offers the ability to launch pre-boot MegaRAID management applications through a driver configuration protocol (DCP). The UEFI driver also supports driver diagnostic protocol, which allows administrators to access pre-boot diagnostics.

## 1.7 Configuration Scenarios

There are three main scenarios in which you can use the SAS RAID controllers:

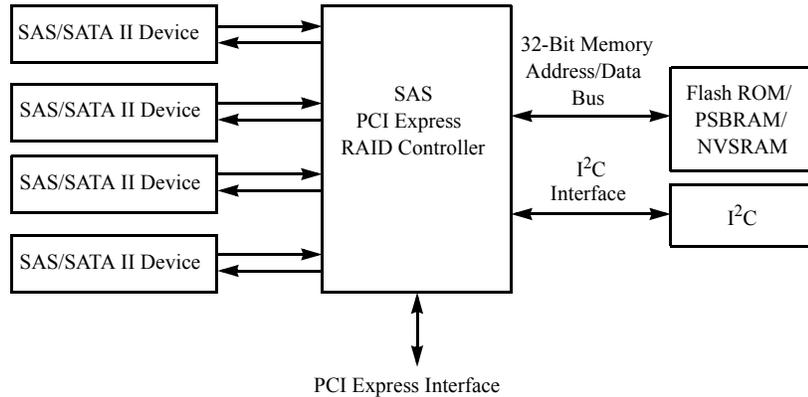
- **Low-end, internal SATA II configurations:** In this configuration, use the RAID controller as a high-end SATA II compatible controller that connects up to eight disks either directly or through a port expander. This configuration is mostly for low-end or entry servers. Enclosure management is provided through out-of-band I<sup>2</sup>C bus. Side bands of both types of internal SAS connectors support the SFF-8485 (SGPIO) interface.
- **Midrange internal SAS configurations:** This configuration is like the internal SATA II configurations, but with high-end disks. This configuration is more suitable for low-range to midrange servers.
- **High-end external SAS/SATA II configurations:** This configuration is for both internal connectivity and external connectivity, using SATA II drives, SAS drives, or both. External enclosure management is supported through in-band, SCSI-enclosed storage. The configuration must support STP and SMP.

Figure 1 shows a direct-connect configuration. The Inter-IC (I<sup>2</sup>C) interface communicates with peripherals. The external memory bus provides a 32-bit memory bus, parity checking, and chip select signals for pipelined synchronous burst static random access memory (PSBRAM), nonvolatile static random access memory (NVSRAM), and Flash ROM.

---

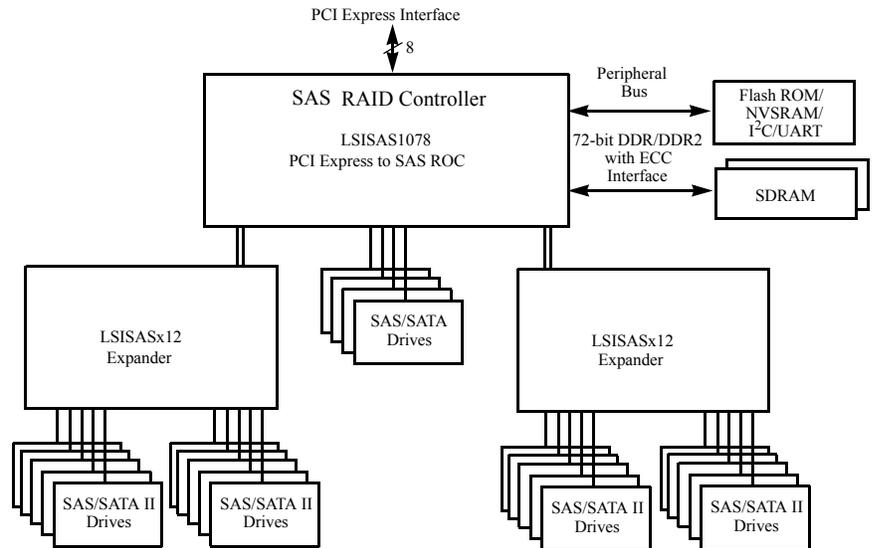
**NOTE:** The external memory bus is 32-bit for the SAS 8704ELP and the SAS 8708ELP, and 64-bit for the SAS 8708EM2, the SAS 8880EM2, and the SAS 8888ELP.

---



**Figure 1: Example of an LSI SAS Direct-Connect Application**

Figure 2 shows an example of a SAS RAID controller configured with an LSISASx12 expander that is connected to SAS disks, SATA II disks, or both.



**Figure 2: Example of an LSI SAS RAID Controller Configured with an LSISASx12 Expander**

**1.7.1 Valid Drive Mix Configurations with HDDs and SSDs**

You can allow a virtual drive to consist of both SSDs and HDDs. For virtual drives that have both SSDs and HDDs, you can choose whether to mix SAS drives and SATA drives on the SSD devices.

You can choose whether to allow a virtual drive to consist of both SSD devices and HDDs. For a virtual drive that consists of SSDs only, you can choose whether to allow SAS SSD drives and SATA SSD drives in that virtual drive. For virtual drives that have both SSDs and HDDs, you can choose whether to mix SAS and SATA HDD drives with SAS and SATA SSD devices in various combinations.

Table 1 lists the valid drive mix configurations you can use when you create virtual drives and allow HDD and SSD mixing. The valid drive mix configurations are based on manufacturer settings.

**Table 1: Valid Drive Mix Configurations**

#	Valid Drive Mix Configurations
1.	SAS HDD with SAS SSD (SAS-only configuration)
2.	SATA HDD with SATA SSD (SATA-only configuration)
3.	SAS HDD with a mix of SAS and SATA SSD (a SATA HDD cannot be added)
4.	SATA HDD with a mix of SAS and SATA SSD (a SAS HDD cannot be added)
5.	SAS SSD with a mix of SAS and SATA HDD (a SATA SSD cannot be added)
6.	SATA SSD with a mix of SAS and SATA HDD (a SAS SSD cannot be added)
7.	A mix of SAS and SATA HDD with a mix of SAS and SATA SSD
8.	A SSD cannot be added to a HDD, but a SAS/SATA mix is allowed.

---

**NOTE:** Only one of the valid configurations listed in [Table 1](#) is allowed based on your controller card manufacturing setting.

---



---

**NOTE:** The valid drive mix also applies to hot spares. For hot spare information, see [Section 2.4.13, Hot Spares, on page 21](#).

---

## 1.8 Technical Support

---

For assistance with installing, configuring, or running your MegaRAID 6Gb/s SAS RAID controller, contact LSI Technical Support:

**Phone Support:**

1-800-633-4545 (North America)

# Chapter 2

## Introduction to RAID

This chapter describes RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks), RAID functions and benefits, RAID components, RAID levels, and configuration strategies. In addition, it defines the RAID availability concept, and offers tips for configuration planning.

### 2.1 RAID Description

RAID is an array, or group of multiple independent physical drives that provide high performance and fault tolerance. A RAID drive group improves I/O (input/output) performance and reliability. The RAID drive group appears to the host computer as a single storage unit or as multiple virtual units. I/O is expedited because several drives can be accessed simultaneously.

### 2.2 RAID Benefits

RAID drive groups improve data storage reliability and fault tolerance compared to single-drive storage systems. Data loss resulting from a drive failure can be prevented by reconstructing missing data from the remaining drives. RAID has gained popularity because it improves I/O performance and increases storage subsystem reliability.

### 2.3 RAID Functions

Virtual drives are drive groups or spanned drive groups that are available to the operating system. The storage space in a virtual drive is spread across all of the drives in the drive group.

Your drives must be organized into virtual drives in a drive group and they must be able to support the RAID level that you select. Below are some common RAID functions:

- Creating hot spare drives
- Configuring drive groups and virtual drives
- Initializing one or more virtual drives
- Accessing controllers, virtual drives, and drives individually
- Rebuilding failed drives
- Verifying that the redundancy data in virtual drives using RAID level 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60 is correct
- Reconstructing virtual drives after changing RAID levels or adding a drive to a drive group
- Selecting a host controller to work on

### 2.4 Components and Features

RAID levels describe a system for ensuring the availability and redundancy of data stored on large disk subsystems. See [Section 2.5, RAID Levels](#) for detailed information about RAID levels. The following subsections describes the components of RAID drive groups and RAID levels.

### 2.4.1 Physical Array

---

A physical array is a group of drives. The drives are managed in partitions known as virtual drives.

### 2.4.2 Virtual Drive

---

A virtual drive is a partition in a drive group that is made up of contiguous data segments on the drives. A virtual drive can consist of an entire drive group, more than one entire drive group, a part of a drive group, parts of more than one drive group, or a combination of any two of these conditions.

### 2.4.3 RAID Drive Group

---

A RAID drive group is one or more drives controlled by the RAID controller.

### 2.4.4 Fault Tolerance

---

Fault tolerance is the capability of the subsystem to undergo a drive failure or failures without compromising data integrity, and processing capability. The RAID controller provides this support through redundant drive groups in RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. The system can still work properly even with drive failure in a drive group, though performance can be degraded to some extent.

In a span of RAID 1 drive groups, each RAID 1 drive group has two drives and can tolerate one drive failure. The span of RAID 1 drive groups can contain up to 32 drives, and tolerate up to 16 drive failures - one in each drive group. A RAID 5 drive group can tolerate one drive failure in each RAID 5 drive group. A RAID 6 drive group can tolerate up to two drive failures.

Each spanned RAID 10 virtual drive can tolerate multiple drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. A RAID 50 virtual drive can tolerate two drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. RAID 60 drive groups can tolerate up to two drive failures in each drive group.

---

**NOTE:** RAID level 0 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) will fail.

---

Fault tolerance is often associated with system availability because it allows the system to be available during the failures. However, this means that it is also important for the system to be available during the repair of the problem.

A hot spare is an unused drive that, in case of a disk failure in a redundant RAID drive group, can be used to rebuild the data and re-establish redundancy. After the hot spare is automatically moved into the RAID drive group, the data is automatically rebuilt on the hot spare drive. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs.

Auto-rebuild allows a failed drive to be replaced and the data automatically rebuilt by “hot-swapping” the drive in the same drive bay. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs.

#### 2.4.4.1 Multipathing

The firmware provides support for detecting and using multiple paths from the RAID controllers to the SAS devices that are in enclosures. Devices connected to enclosures have multiple paths to them. With redundant paths to the same port of a device, if one path fails, another path can be used to communicate between the controller and the device. Using multiple paths with load balancing, instead of a single path, can increase reliability through redundancy.

Applications show the enclosures and the drives connected to the enclosures. The firmware dynamically recognizes new enclosures added to a configuration along with their contents (new drives). In addition, the firmware dynamically adds the enclosure and its contents to the management entity currently in-use.

Multipathing provides the following features:

- Support for failover, in the event of path failure
- Auto-discovery of new or restored paths while the system is online, and reversion to system load balancing policy
- Measurable bandwidth improvement to the multi-path device
- Support for changing the load balancing path while the system is online

The firmware determines whether enclosure modules (ESMs) are part of the same enclosure. When a new enclosure module is added (allowing multi-path) or removed (going single path), an Asynchronous Event Notification (AEN) is generated. AENs about drives contain correct information about the "enclosure", when the drives are connected by multiple paths. The enclosure module detects partner ESMs and issue events appropriately.

In a system with two ESMs, you can replace one of the ESMs without affecting the virtual drive availability. For example, the controller can run heavy I/Os, and when you replace one of the ESM modules, I/Os should not stop. The controller uses different paths to balance the load on the entire system.

In the MegaRAID Storage Manager utility, when multiple paths are available to a drive, the drive information will show only one enclosure. The utility shows that a redundant path is available to a drive. All drives with a redundant path display this information. The firmware supports online replacement of enclosure modules.

#### 2.4.5 Consistency Check

---

The Consistency Check operation verifies correctness of the data in virtual drives that use RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. (RAID 0 does not provide data redundancy). For example, in a system with parity, checking consistency means computing the data on one drive and comparing the results to the contents of the parity drive.

---

**NOTE:** It is recommended that you perform a consistency check at least once a month.

---

#### 2.4.6 Copyback

---

The copyback feature allows you to copy data from a source drive of a virtual drive to a destination drive that is not a part of the virtual drive. Copyback is often used to create or restore a specific physical configuration for a drive group (for example, a specific arrangement of drive group members on the device I/O buses). Copyback can be run automatically or manually.

Typically, when a drive fails or is expected to fail, the data is rebuilt on a hot spare. The failed drive is replaced with a new disk. Then the data is copied from the hot spare to the new drive, and the hot spare reverts from a rebuild drive to its original hot spare status. The copyback operation runs as a background activity, and the virtual drive is still available online to the host.

Copyback is also initiated when the first Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) error occurs on a drive that is part of a virtual drive. The destination drive is a hot spare that qualifies as a rebuild drive. The drive with the SMART error is marked as "failed" only after the successful completion of the copyback. This avoids putting the drive group in degraded status.

---

**NOTE:** During a copyback operation, if the drive group involved in the copyback is deleted because of a virtual drive deletion, the destination drive reverts to an Unconfigured Good state or hot spare state.

---

**Order of Precedence.** In the following scenarios, rebuild takes precedence over the copyback operation:

- If a copyback operation is already taking place to a hot spare drive, and any virtual drive on the controller degrades, the copyback operation aborts, and a rebuild starts. The rebuild changes the virtual drive to the optimal state.
- The rebuild operation takes precedence over the copyback operation when the conditions exist to start both operations. For example:
  - Where the hot spare is not configured (or unavailable) in the system.
  - There are two drives (both members of virtual drives), with one drive exceeding the SMART error threshold, and the other failed.
  - If you add a hot spare (assume a global hot spare) during a copyback operation, the copyback is aborted, and the rebuild operation starts on the hot spare.

#### 2.4.7 Background Initialization

---

Background initialization is a consistency check that is forced when you create a virtual drive. The difference between a background initialization and a consistency check is that a background initialization is forced on new virtual drives. This is an automatic operation that starts 5 minutes after you create the virtual drive.

Background initialization is a check for media errors on the drives. It ensures that striped data segments are the same on all drives in a drive group. The default and recommended background initialization rate is 30 percent. Before you change the rebuild rate, you must stop the background initialization or the rate change will not affect the background initialization rate. After you stop background initialization and change the rebuild rate, the rate change takes effect when you restart background initialization.

#### 2.4.8 Patrol Read

---

Patrol read involves the review of your system for possible drive errors that could lead to drive failure and then action to correct errors. The goal is to protect data integrity by detecting drive failure before the failure can damage data. The corrective actions depend on the drive group configuration and the type of errors.

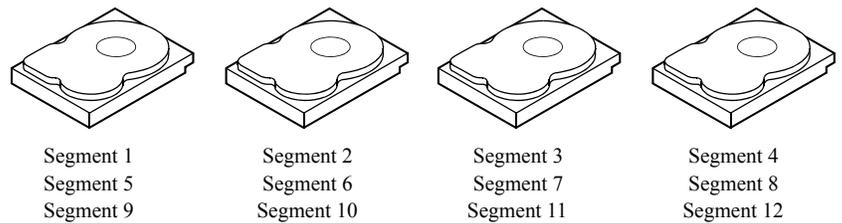
Patrol read starts only when the controller is idle for a defined period of time and no other background tasks are active, though it can continue to run during heavy I/O processes.

You can use the MegaRAID Command Tool or the MegaRAID Storage Manager to select the patrol read options, which you can use to set automatic or manual operation, or disable patrol read. See [Section 5.4, Controller Property-Related Options](#) or [Section 9.5, Running a Patrol Read](#).

**2.4.9 Disk Striping**

Disk striping allows you to write data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. Disk striping involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from 8 KB to 1024 KB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. It is recommended that you keep stripe sizes the same across RAID drive groups.

For example, in a four-disk system using only disk striping (used in RAID level 0), segment 1 is written to disk 1, segment 2 is written to disk 2, and so on. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously, but disk striping does not provide data redundancy.



**Figure 3: Example of Disk Striping (RAID 0)**

**2.4.9.1 Stripe Width**

Stripe width is the number of drives involved in a drive group where striping is implemented. For example, a four-disk drive group with disk striping has a stripe width of four.

**2.4.9.2 Stripe Size**

The stripe size is the length of the interleaved data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of disk space and has 16 KB of data residing on each disk in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB.

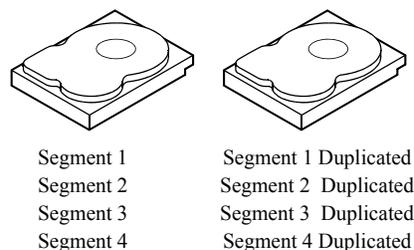
**2.4.9.3 Strip Size**

The strip size is the portion of a stripe that resides on a single drive.

**2.4.10 Disk Mirroring**

With mirroring (used in RAID 1 and RAID 10), data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive. The primary advantage of disk mirroring is that it provides 100 percent data redundancy. Because the contents of the disk are completely written to a second disk, data is not lost if one disk fails. In addition, both drives contain the same data at all times, so either disk can act as the operational disk. If one disk fails, the contents of the other disk can be used to run the system and reconstruct the failed disk.

Disk mirroring provides 100 percent redundancy, but is expensive because each drive in the system must be duplicated. Figure 4 shows an example of disk mirroring.



**Figure 4: Example of Disk Mirroring (RAID 1)**

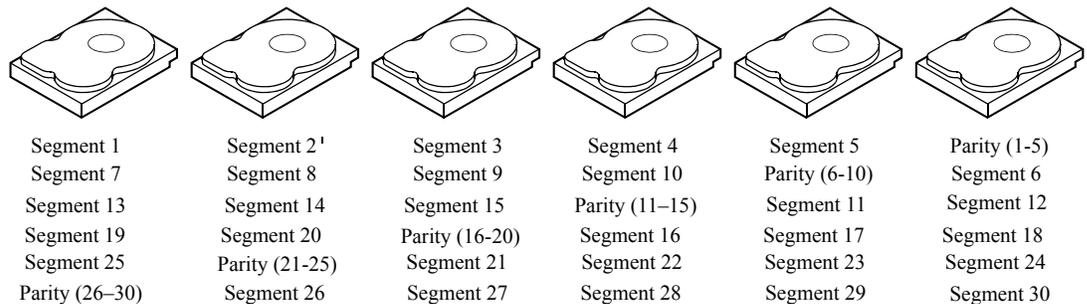
### 2.4.11 Parity

Parity generates a set of redundancy data from two or more parent data sets. The redundancy data can be used to reconstruct one of the parent data sets in the event of a drive failure. Parity data does not fully duplicate the parent data sets, but parity generation can slow the write process. In RAID, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all of the drives in a drive group. The types of parity are described in [Table 2](#).

**Table 2: Types of Parity**

Parity Type	Description
Dedicated	The parity data on two or more drives is stored on an additional disk.
Distributed	The parity data is distributed across more than one drive in the system.

RAID 5 combines distributed parity with disk striping. If a single drive fails, it can be rebuilt from the parity and the data on the remaining drives. An example of a RAID 5 drive group is shown in [Figure 5](#). RAID 5 uses parity to provide redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. RAID 6 uses distributed parity and disk striping, also, but adds a second set of parity data so that it can survive up to two drive failures.



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

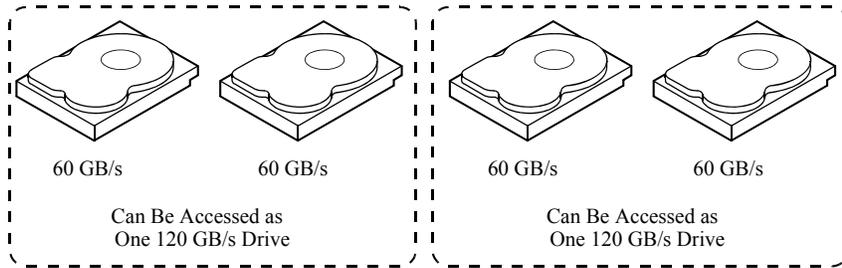
**Figure 5: Example of Distributed Parity (RAID 5)**

### 2.4.12 Disk Spanning

Disk spanning allows multiple drives to function like one big drive. Spanning overcomes lack of disk space and simplifies storage management by combining existing resources or adding relatively inexpensive resources. For example, four 20 GB drives can be combined to appear to the operating system as a single 80 GB drive.

Spanning alone does not provide reliability or performance enhancements. Spanned virtual drives must have the same stripe size and must be contiguous. In [Figure 6](#), RAID 1 drive groups are turned into a RAID 10 drive group.

**NOTE:** Make sure that the spans are in different backplanes, so that if one span fails, you do not lose the whole drive group.



**Figure 6: Example of Disk Spanning**

Spanning two contiguous RAID 0 virtual drives does not produce a new RAID level or add fault tolerance. It does increase the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles.

**2.4.12.1 Spanning for RAID 00, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60**

Table 3 describes how to configure RAID 00, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 by spanning. The virtual drives must have the same stripe size and the maximum number of spans is eight. The full drive capacity is used when you span virtual drives; you cannot specify a smaller drive capacity.

See Chapter 8, Configuration for detailed procedures for configuring drive groups and virtual drives, and spanning the drives.

**Table 3: Spanning for RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60**

Level	Description
00	Configure RAID 00 by spanning two contiguous RAID 0 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller.
10	Configure RAID 10 by spanning two contiguous RAID 1 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller. RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.
50	Configure RAID 50 by spanning two contiguous RAID 5 virtual drives. The RAID 5 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.
60	Configure RAID 60 by spanning two contiguous RAID 6 virtual drives. The RAID 6 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.

**2.4.13 Hot Spares**

A hot spare is an extra, unused drive that is part of the disk subsystem. It is usually in standby mode, ready for service if a drive fails. Hot spares permit you to replace failed drives without system shutdown or user intervention. MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers can implement automatic and transparent rebuilds of failed drives using hot spare drives, providing a high degree of fault tolerance and zero downtime.

**NOTE:** When running RAID 0 and RAID 5 virtual drives on the same set of drives (a sliced configuration), a rebuild to a hot spare will not occur after a drive failure until the RAID 0 virtual drive is deleted.

The RAID management software allows you to specify drives as hot spares. When a hot spare is needed, the RAID controller assigns the hot spare that has a capacity closest to and at least as great as that of the failed drive to take the place of the failed drive. The failed drive is removed from the virtual drive and marked ready awaiting removal once the rebuild to a hot spare begins. You can make hot spares of the drives that are not in a RAID virtual drive.

You can use the RAID management software to designate the hot spare to have enclosure affinity, meaning that if there are drive failures present on a split backplane configuration, the hot spare will be used first on the backplane side that it resides in.

If the hot spare is designated as having enclosure affinity, it will attempt to rebuild any failed drives on the backplane that it resides in before rebuilding any other drives on other backplanes.

---

**NOTE:** If a rebuild to a hot spare fails for any reason, the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed". If the source drive fails, both the source drive and the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed".

---

There are two types of hot spares:

- Global hot spare
- Dedicated hot spare

#### 2.4.13.1 Global Hot Spare

A global hot spare drive can be used to replace any failed drive in a redundant drive group as long as its capacity is equal to or larger than the coerced capacity of the failed drive. A global hot spare defined on any channel should be available to replace a failed drive on both channels.

#### 2.4.13.2 Dedicated Hot Spare

A dedicated hot spare can be used to replace a failed drive only in a selected drive group. One or more drives can be designated as a member of a spare drive pool. The most suitable drive from the pool is selected for fail over. A dedicated hot spare is used before one from the global hot spare pool.

Hot spare drives can be located on any RAID channel. Standby hot spares (not being used in RAID drive group) are polled every 60 seconds at a minimum, and their status made available in the drive group management software. RAID controllers offer the ability to rebuild with a disk that is in a system, but not initially set to be a hot spare.

Observe the following parameters when using hot spares:

- Hot spares are used only in drive groups with redundancy: RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.
- A hot spare connected to a specific RAID controller can be used to rebuild a drive that is connected to the same controller only.
- You must assign the hot spare to one or more drives through the controller BIOS or use drive group management software to place it in the hot spare pool.
- A hot spare must have free space equal to or greater than the drive it replaces. For example, to replace an 18 GB drive, the hot spare must be 18 GB or larger.

#### 2.4.14 Disk Rebuilds

---

When a drive in a RAID drive group fails, you can rebuild the drive by recreating the data that was stored on the drive before it failed. The RAID controller recreates the data using the data stored on the other drives in the drive group. Rebuilding can be done only in drive groups with data redundancy, which includes RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 drive groups.

The RAID controller uses hot spares to rebuild failed drives automatically and transparently, at user-defined rebuild rates. If a hot spare is available, the rebuild can start automatically when a drive fails. If a hot spare is not available, the failed drive must be replaced with a new drive so that the data on the failed drive can be rebuilt.

The failed drive is removed from the virtual drive and marked ready awaiting removal when the rebuild to a hot spare begins. If the system goes down during a rebuild, the RAID controller automatically restarts the rebuild after the system reboots.

---

**NOTE:** When the rebuild to a hot spare begins, the failed drive is often removed from the virtual drive before management applications detect the failed drive. When this occurs, the events logs show the drive rebuilding to the hot spare without showing the failed drive. The formerly failed drive will be marked as "ready" after a rebuild begins to a hot spare.

---

---

**NOTE:** If a source drive fails during a rebuild to a hot spare, the rebuild fails, and the failed source drive is marked as offline. In addition, the rebuilding hot spare drive is changed back to a hot spare. After a rebuild fails because of a source drive failure, the dedicated hot spare is still dedicated and assigned to the correct drive group, and the global hot spare is still global.

---

An automatic drive rebuild will not start if you replace a drive during a RAID-level migration. The rebuild must be started manually after the expansion or migration procedure is complete.

#### 2.4.15 Rebuild Rate

---

The rebuild rate is the percentage of the compute cycles dedicated to rebuilding failed drives. A rebuild rate of 100 percent means that the system gives priority to rebuilding the failed drives.

The rebuild rate can be configured between 0 percent and 100 percent. At 0 percent, the rebuild is done only if the system is not doing anything else. At 100 percent, the rebuild has a higher priority than any other system activity. Using 0 or 100 percent is not recommended. The default rebuild rate is 30 percent.

#### 2.4.16 Hot Swap

---

A hot swap is the manual replacement of a defective drive unit while the computer is still running. When a new drive has been installed, a rebuild will occur automatically if:

- The newly inserted drive is the same capacity as or larger than the failed drive
- It is placed in the same drive bay as the failed drive it is replacing

The RAID controller can be configured to detect the new drives and rebuild the contents of the drive automatically.

#### 2.4.17 Drive States

---

A drive state is a property indicating the status of the drive. The drive states are described in [Table 4](#).

**Table 4: Drive States**

State	Description
Online	A drive that can be accessed by the RAID controller and is part of the virtual drive.
Unconfigured Good	A drive that is functioning normally but is not configured as a part of a virtual drive or as a hot spare.
Hot Spare	A drive that is powered up and ready for use as a spare in case an online drive fails.
Failed	A drive that was originally configured as Online or Hot Spare, but on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error.
Rebuild	A drive to which data is being written to restore full redundancy for a virtual drive.
Unconfigured Bad	A drive on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error; the drive was Unconfigured Good or the drive could not be initialized.
Missing	A drive that was Online but which has been removed from its location.
Offline	A drive that is part of a virtual drive but which has invalid data as far as the RAID configuration is concerned.  When a virtual drive with cached data goes offline, the cache for the virtual drive is discarded. Because the virtual drive is offline, the cache cannot be saved.

#### 2.4.18 Virtual Drive States

The virtual drive states are described in [Table 5](#).

**Table 5: Virtual Drive States**

State	Description
Optimal	The virtual drive operating condition is good. All configured drives are online.
Degraded	The virtual drive operating condition is not optimal. One of the configured drives has failed or is offline.
Partial Degraded	The operating condition in a RAID 6 virtual drive is not optimal. One of the configured drives has failed or is offline. RAID 6 can tolerate up to two drive failures.
Failed	The virtual drive has failed.
Offline	The virtual drive is not available to the RAID controller.

#### 2.4.19 Enclosure Management

Enclosure management is the intelligent monitoring of the disk subsystem by software and/or hardware. The disk subsystem can be part of the host computer or can reside in an external disk enclosure. Enclosure management helps you stay informed of events in the disk subsystem, such as a drive or power supply failure. Enclosure management increases the fault tolerance of the disk subsystem.

## 2.5 RAID Levels

---

The RAID controller supports RAID levels 0, 00, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. The supported RAID levels are summarized in the following section.

In addition, it supports independent drives (configured as RAID 0 and RAID 00.) The following sections describe the RAID levels in detail.

### 2.5.1 Summary of RAID Levels

---

RAID 0 uses striping to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that does not require fault tolerance.

RAID 1 uses mirroring so that data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive. This is good for small databases or other applications that require small capacity but complete data redundancy.

RAID 5 uses disk striping and parity data across all drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput, especially for small random access.

RAID 6 uses distributed parity, with two independent parity blocks per stripe, and disk striping. A RAID 6 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives without losing data. A RAID 6 drive group, which requires a minimum of three drives, is similar to a RAID 5 drive group. Blocks of data and parity information are written across all drives. The parity information is used to recover the data if one or two drives fail in the drive group.

A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups.

RAID 10, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1, consists of striped data across mirrored spans. A RAID 10 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of mirrored drives. RAID 10 allows a maximum of eight spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size. RAID 10 provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy but uses a larger number of spans.

RAID 50, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 5, uses distributed parity and disk striping. A RAID 50 drive group is a spanned drive group in which data is striped across multiple RAID 5 drive groups. RAID 50 works best with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfers, and medium-to-large capacity.

---

**NOTE:** Having virtual drives of different RAID levels, such as RAID 0 and RAID 5, in the same drive group is not allowed.

For example, if an existing RAID 5 virtual drive is created out of partial space in an array, the next virtual drive in the array has to be R5 only.

---

RAID 60, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 6, uses distributed parity, with two independent parity blocks per stripe in each RAID set, and disk striping. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. It works best with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfers, and medium-to-large capacity.

### 2.5.2 Selecting a RAID Level

---

To ensure the best performance, you should select the optimal RAID level when you create a system drive. The optimal RAID level for your drive group depends on a number of factors:

- The number of drives in the drive group
- The capacity of the drives in the drive group

- The need for data redundancy
- The disk performance requirements

### 2.5.3 RAID 0

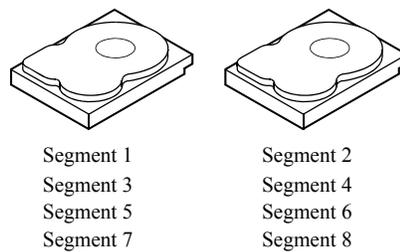
RAID 0 provides disk striping across all drives in the RAID drive group. RAID 0 does not provide any data redundancy, but, along with RAID 0, does offer the best performance of any RAID level. RAID 0 breaks up data into smaller segments, and then stripes the data segments across each drive in the drive group. The size of each data segment is determined by the stripe size. RAID 0 offers high bandwidth.

**NOTE:** RAID level 0 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) will fail.

By breaking up a large file into smaller segments, the RAID controller can use both SAS drives and SATA drives to read or write the file faster. RAID 0 involves no parity calculations to complicate the write operation. This makes RAID 0 ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. Table 6 provides an overview of RAID 0. Figure 7 provides a graphic example of a RAID 0 drive group.

**Table 6: RAID 0 Overview**

Uses	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not require fault tolerance.
Strong Points	Provides increased data throughput for large files. No capacity loss penalty for parity.
Weak Points	Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth. All data lost if any drive fails.
Drives	1 to 32



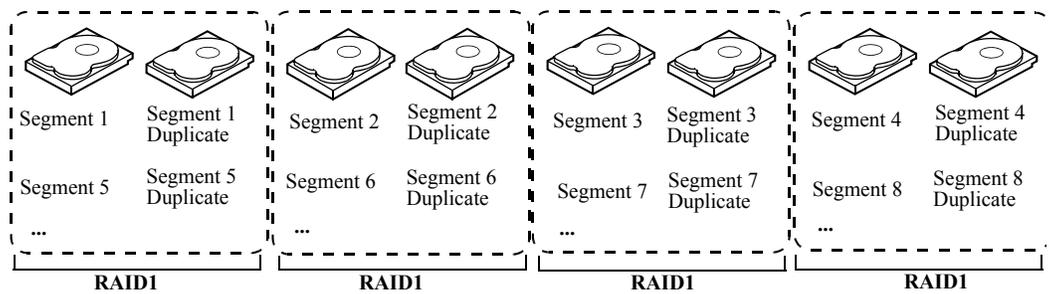
**Figure 7: RAID 0 Drive Group Example with Two Drives**

### 2.5.4 RAID 1

In RAID 1, the RAID controller duplicates all data from one drive to a second drive in the drive group. RAID 1 supports an even number of drives from 2 to 32 in a single span. RAID 1 provides complete data redundancy, but at the cost of doubling the required data storage capacity. Table 7 provides an overview of RAID 1. Figure 8 provides a graphic example of a RAID 1 drive group.

**Table 7: RAID 1 Overview**

Uses	Use RAID 1 for small databases or any other environment that requires fault tolerance but small capacity.
Strong Points	Provides complete data redundancy. RAID 1 is ideal for any application that requires fault tolerance and minimal capacity.
Weak Points	Requires twice as many drives. Performance is impaired during drive rebuilds.
Drives	2 - 32 (must be an even number of drives)



**Figure 8: RAID 1 Drive Group**

**2.5.5 RAID 5**

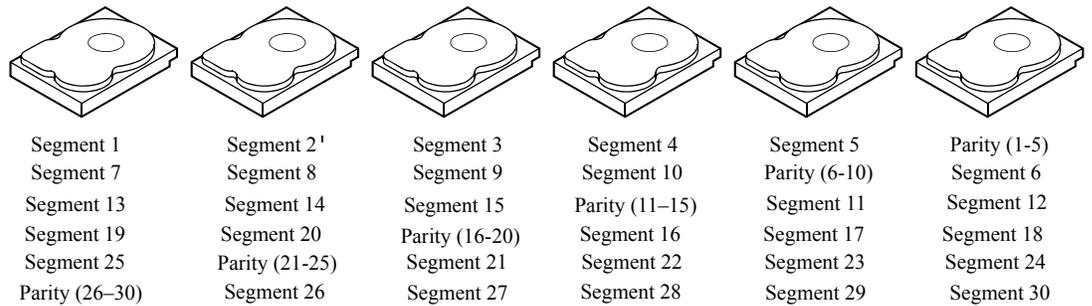
RAID 5 includes disk striping at the block level and parity. Parity is the data's property of being odd or even, and parity checking is used to detect errors in the data. In RAID 5, the parity information is written to all drives. RAID 5 is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously.

RAID 5 addresses the bottleneck issue for random I/O operations. Because each drive contains both data and parity, numerous writes can take place concurrently.

Table 8 provides an overview of RAID 5. Figure 9 provides a graphic example of a RAID 5 drive group.

**Table 8: RAID 5 Overview**

Uses	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Use RAID 5 for transaction processing applications because each drive can read and write independently. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity drive to recreate all missing information. Use also for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.
Strong Points	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Provides redundancy with lowest loss of capacity.
Weak Points	Not well-suited to tasks requiring lot of writes. Suffers more impact if no cache is used (clustering). Drive performance will be reduced if a drive is being rebuilt. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
Drives	3 to 32



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

**Figure 9: RAID 5 Drive Group with Six Drives**

### 2.5.6 RAID 6

RAID 6 is similar to RAID 5 (disk striping and parity), except that instead of one parity block per stripe, there are two. With two independent parity blocks, RAID 6 can survive the loss of two drives in a virtual drive without losing data. Provides a high level of data protection through the use of a second parity block in each stripe. Use RAID 6 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to recreate all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds do not occur at the same time. The controller rebuilds one failed drive, and then the other failed drive.

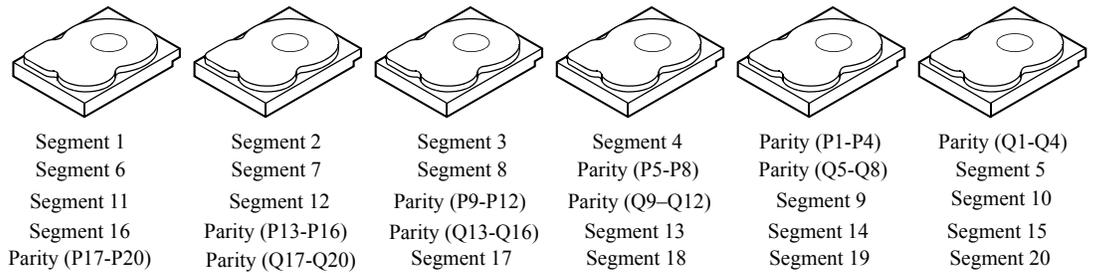
Table 9 provides an overview of a RAID 6 drive group.

**Table 9: RAID 6 Overview**

Uses	Use for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.
Strong Points	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Can survive the loss of two drives or the loss of a drive while another drive is being rebuilt. Provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels. Read performance is similar to that of RAID 5.
Weak Points	Not well-suited to tasks requiring a lot of writes. A RAID 6 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes. RAID 6 costs more because of the extra capacity required by using two parity blocks per stripe.
Drives	3 to 32

Figure 10 shows a RAID 6 data layout. The second set of parity drives are denoted by Q. The P drives follow the RAID 5 parity scheme.

**Figure 10: Example of Distributed Parity across Two Blocks in a Stripe (RAID 6)**



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

**2.5.7 RAID 00**

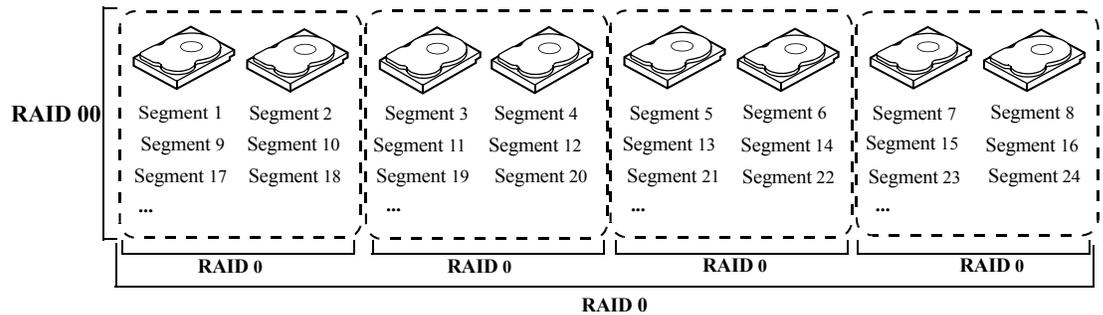
A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups. RAID 00 does not provide any data redundancy, but, along with RAID 0, does offer the best performance of any RAID level. RAID 00 breaks up data into smaller segments and then stripes the data segments across each drive in the drive groups. The size of each data segment is determined by the stripe size. RAID 00 offers high bandwidth.

**NOTE:** RAID level 00 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) will fail.

By breaking up a large file into smaller segments, the RAID controller can use both SAS drives and SATA drives to read or write the file faster. RAID 00 involves no parity calculations to complicate the write operation. This makes RAID 00 ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. Table 10 provides an overview of RAID 00. Figure 11 provides a graphic example of a RAID 00 drive group.

**Table 10: RAID 00 Overview**

Uses	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not require fault tolerance.
Strong Points	Provides increased data throughput for large files. No capacity loss penalty for parity.
Weak Points	Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth. All data lost if any drive fails.
Drives	2 to 256



**Figure 11: RAID 00 Drive Group Example with Two Drives**

**2.5.8 RAID 10**

RAID 10 is a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1, and consists of stripes across mirrored drives. RAID 10 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then mirrors the blocks of data to each RAID 1 drive group. The first RAID 1 drive in each drive group then duplicates its data to the second drive. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.

Spanning is used because one virtual drive is defined across more than one drive group. Virtual drives defined across multiple RAID 1 level drive groups are referred to as RAID level 10, (1+0). Data is striped across drive groups to increase performance by enabling access to multiple drive groups simultaneously.

Each spanned RAID 10 virtual drive can tolerate multiple drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. If there are drive failures, less than total drive capacity is available.

Configure RAID 10 by spanning two contiguous RAID 1 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller. RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans, with a maximum of 32 drives per span. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID 10 virtual drive in the span.

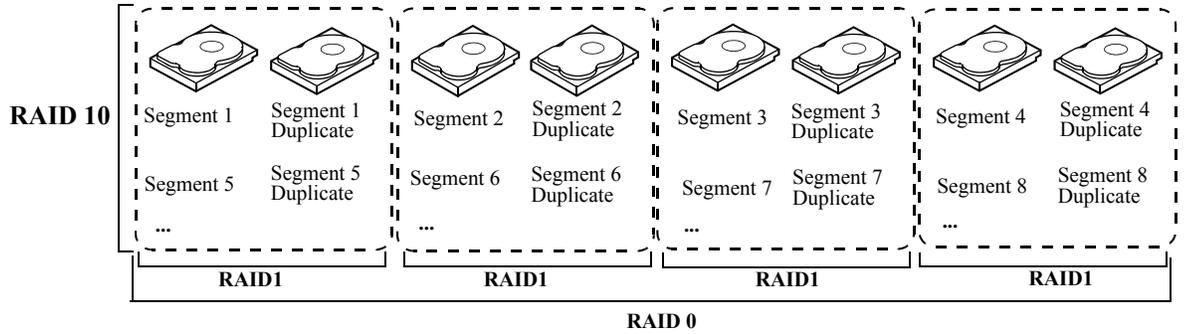
**NOTE:** Other factors, such as the type of controller, can restrict the number of drives supported by RAID 10 virtual drives.

Table 11 provides an overview of RAID 10.

**Table 11: RAID 10 Overview**

Uses	Appropriate when used with data storage that needs 100 percent redundancy of mirrored drive groups and that also needs the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups.) RAID 10 works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity.
Strong Points	Provides both high data transfer rates and complete data redundancy.
Weak Points	Requires twice as many drives as all other RAID levels except RAID 1.
Drives	4 - the maximum number of drives supported by the controller (with a maximum of eight spans)

In Figure 12, virtual drive 0 is created by distributing data across four drive groups (drive groups 0 through 3).



**Figure 12: RAID 10 Level Virtual Drive**

**2.5.9 RAID 50**

RAID 50 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 5. RAID 50 includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drive groups. RAID 50 is best implemented on two RAID 5 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups.

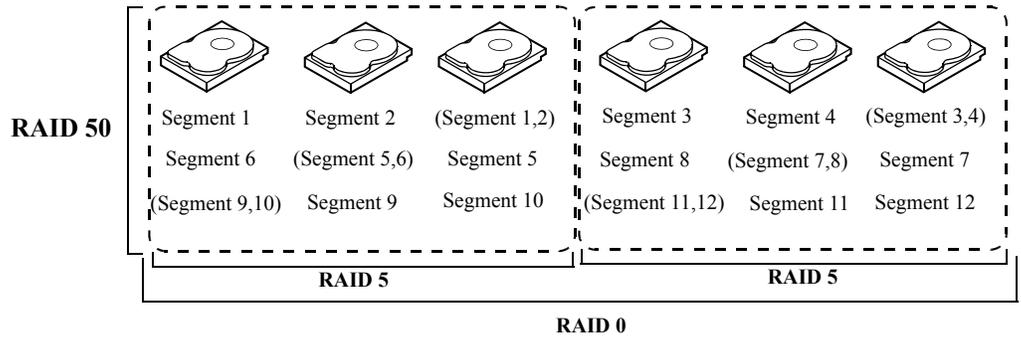
RAID 50 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID 5 disk set. RAID 5 breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-or on the blocks and then writes the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.

RAID level 50 can support up to eight spans and tolerate up to eight drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Though multiple drive failures can be tolerated, only one drive failure can be tolerated in each RAID 5 level drive group.

Table 12 provides an overview of RAID 50.

**Table 12: RAID 50 Overview**

Uses	Appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfer, and medium to large capacity.
Strong Points	Provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance.
Weak Points	Requires 2 to 8 times as many parity drives as RAID 5.
Drives	Eight spans of RAID 5 drive groups containing 3-32 drives each (limited by the maximum number of devices supported by the controller)



**Figure 13: RAID 50 Level Virtual Drive**

**2.5.10 RAID 60**

RAID 60 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 6, and includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drive groups. RAID 6 supports two independent parity blocks per stripe. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. RAID 60 is best implemented on two RAID 6 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups.

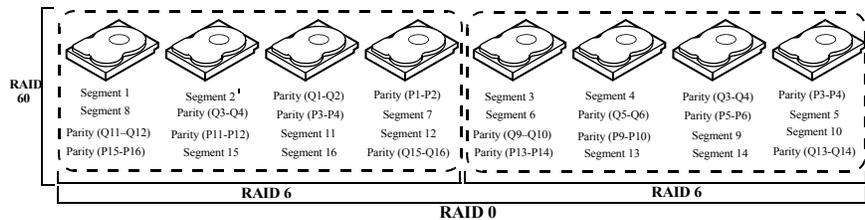
RAID 60 breaks up data into smaller blocks, and then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID 6 disk set. RAID 6 breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-or on the blocks and then writes the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.

RAID 60 can support up to 8 spans and tolerate up to 16 drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Two drive failures can be tolerated in each RAID 6 level drive group.

**Table 13: RAID 60 Overview**

Uses	<p>Provides a high level of data protection through the use of a second parity block in each stripe. Use RAID 60 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.</p> <p>In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a RAID set in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to recreate all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 set in a RAID 60 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds can occur at the same time.</p> <p>Use for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.</p>
Strong Points	<p>Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Each RAID 6 set can survive the loss of two drives or the loss of a drive while another drive is being rebuilt. Provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels. Read performance is similar to that of RAID 50, though random reads in RAID 60 might be slightly faster because data is spread across at least one more disk in each RAID 6 set.</p>
Weak Points	<p>Not well suited to tasks requiring lot of writes. A RAID 60 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes. RAID 6 costs more because of the extra capacity required by using two parity blocks per stripe.</p>
Drives	A minimum of 8

Figure 14 shows a RAID 6 data layout. The second set of parity drives are denoted by Q. The P drives follow the RAID 5 parity scheme.



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

**Figure 14: RAID 60 Level Virtual Drive**

## 2.6 RAID Configuration Strategies

The most important factors in RAID drive group configuration are:

- Virtual drive availability (fault tolerance)
- Virtual drive performance
- Virtual drive capacity

You cannot configure a virtual drive that optimizes all three factors, but it is easy to choose a virtual drive configuration that maximizes one factor at the expense of another factor. For example, RAID 1 (mirroring) provides excellent fault tolerance, but requires a redundant drive.

The following subsections describe how to use the RAID levels to maximize virtual drive availability (fault tolerance), virtual drive performance, and virtual drive capacity.

### 2.6.1 Maximizing Fault Tolerance

Fault tolerance is achieved through the ability to perform automatic and transparent rebuilds using hot spare drives and hot swaps. A hot spare drive is an unused online available drive that the RAID controller instantly plugs into the system when an active drive fails. After the hot spare is automatically moved into the RAID drive group, the failed drive is automatically rebuilt on the spare drive. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs.

A hot swap is the manual substitution of a replacement unit in a disk subsystem for a defective one, where the substitution can be performed while the subsystem is running hot swap drives. Auto-Rebuild in the WebBIOS Configuration Utility allows a failed drive to be replaced and automatically rebuilt by “hot-swapping” the drive in the same drive bay. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs, providing a high degree of fault tolerance and zero downtime.

**Table 14: RAID Levels and Fault Tolerance**

RAID Level	Fault Tolerance
0	Does not provide fault tolerance. All data is lost if any drive fails. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. It involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. RAID 0 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance.
1	Provides complete data redundancy. If one drive fails, the contents of the other drive in the drive group can be used to run the system and reconstruct the failed drive. The primary advantage of disk mirroring is that it provides 100 percent data redundancy. Since the contents of the drive are completely written to a second drive, no data is lost if one of the drives fails. Both drives contain the same data at all times. RAID 1 is ideal for any application that requires fault tolerance and minimal capacity.
5	Combines distributed parity with disk striping. Parity provides redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to reconstruct all missing information. In RAID 5, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all drives in a drive group. Using distributed parity, RAID 5 offers fault tolerance with limited overhead.
6	Combines distributed parity with disk striping. RAID 6 can sustain two drive failures and still maintain data integrity. Parity provides redundancy for two drive failures without duplicating the contents of entire drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to reconstruct all missing information. In RAID 6, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all of the drives in a drive group. Using distributed parity, RAID 6 offers fault tolerance with limited overhead.
00	Does not provide fault tolerance. All data in a virtual drive is lost if any drive in that virtual drive fails. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. It involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. RAID 00 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance.

**Table 14: RAID Levels and Fault Tolerance (Continued)**

RAID Level	Fault Tolerance
10	Provides complete data redundancy using striping across spanned RAID 1 drive groups. RAID 10 works well for any environment that requires the 100 percent redundancy offered by mirrored drive groups. RAID 10 can sustain a drive failure in each mirrored drive group and maintain drive integrity.
50	Provides data redundancy using distributed parity across spanned RAID 5 drive groups. RAID 50 includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to recreate all missing information. RAID 50 can sustain one drive failure per RAID 5 drive group and still maintain data integrity.
60	Provides data redundancy using distributed parity across spanned RAID 6 drive groups. RAID 60 can sustain two drive failures per RAID 6 drive group and still maintain data integrity. It provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels. RAID 60 includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to recreate all missing information.

### 2.6.2 Maximizing Performance

A RAID disk subsystem improves I/O performance. The RAID drive group appears to the host computer as a single storage unit or as multiple virtual units. I/O is faster because drives can be accessed simultaneously. [Table 15](#) describes the performance for each RAID level.

**Table 15: RAID Levels and Performance**

RAID Level	Performance
0	RAID 0 (striping) offers excellent performance. RAID 0 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then writes a block to each drive in the drive group. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. It involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from 8 KB to 1024 KB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously.
1	With RAID 1 (mirroring), each drive in the system must be duplicated, which requires more time and resources than striping. Performance is impaired during drive rebuilds.
5	RAID 5 provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Use this RAID level for any application that requires high read request rates, but low write request rates, such as transaction processing applications, because each drive can read and write independently. Since each drive contains both data and parity, numerous writes can take place concurrently. In addition, robust caching algorithms and hardware based exclusive-or assist make RAID 5 performance exceptional in many different environments.  Parity generation can slow the write process, making write performance significantly lower for RAID 5 than for RAID 0 or RAID 1. Drive performance is reduced when a drive is being rebuilt. Clustering can also reduce drive performance. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
6	RAID 6 works best when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, and high data transfer. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. However, RAID 6 is not well suited to tasks requiring a lot of writes. A RAID 6 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
00	RAID 00 (striping in a spanned drive group) offers excellent performance. RAID 00 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then writes a block to each drive in the drive groups. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. Striping involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from 8 KB to 1024 KB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously.

**Table 15: RAID Levels and Performance (Continued)**

RAID Level	Performance
10	RAID 10 works best for data storage that need the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups), which provides high data transfer rates. Spanning increases the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles. The system performance improves as the number of spans increases. (The maximum number of spans is eight.) As the storage space in the spans is filled, the system stripes data over fewer and fewer spans and RAID performance degrades to that of a RAID 1 or RAID 5 drive group.
50	RAID 50 works best when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, and high data transfer. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. Spanning increases the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles. The system performance improves as the number of spans increases. (The maximum number of spans is eight.) As the storage space in the spans is filled, the system stripes data over fewer and fewer spans and RAID performance degrades to that of a RAID 1 or RAID 5 drive group.
60	RAID 60 works best when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, and high data transfer. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. Spanning increases the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles. The system performance improves as the number of spans increases. (The maximum number of spans is eight.) As the storage space in the spans is filled, the system stripes data over fewer and fewer spans and RAID performance degrades to that of a RAID 1 or RAID 6 drive group.  RAID 60 is not well suited to tasks requiring a lot of writes. A RAID 60 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.

### 2.6.3 Maximizing Storage Capacity

Storage capacity is an important factor when selecting a RAID level. There are several variables to consider. Striping alone (RAID 0) requires less storage space than mirrored data (RAID 1) or distributed parity (RAID 5 or RAID 6). RAID 5, which provides redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives, requires less space than RAID 1. [Table 16](#) explains the effects of the RAID levels on storage capacity.

**Table 16: RAID Levels and Capacity**

RAID Level	Capacity
0	RAID 0 (striping) involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. RAID 0 provides maximum storage capacity for a given set of drives.
1	With RAID 1 (mirroring), data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive, which doubles the required data storage capacity. This is expensive because each drive in the system must be duplicated.
5	RAID 5 provides redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. RAID 5 breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-or on the blocks, then writes the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.
6	RAID 6 provides redundancy for two drive failures without duplicating the contents of entire drives. However, it requires extra capacity because it uses two parity blocks per stripe. This makes RAID 60 more expensive to implement.
00	RAID 00 (striping in a spanned drive group) involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. RAID 00 provides maximum storage capacity for a given set of drives.

**Table 16: RAID Levels and Capacity (Continued)**

RAID Level	Capacity
10	RAID 10 requires twice as many drives as all other RAID levels except RAID 1. RAID 10 works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity. Disk spanning allows multiple drives to function like one big drive. Spanning overcomes lack of disk space and simplifies storage management by combining existing resources or adding relatively inexpensive resources.
50	RAID 50 requires two to four times as many parity drives as RAID 5. This RAID level works best when used with data that requires medium to large capacity.
60	RAID 60 provides redundancy for two drive failures in each RAID set without duplicating the contents of entire drives. However, it requires extra capacity because a RAID 60 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation. This makes RAID 60 more expensive to implement.

## 2.7 RAID Availability

### 2.7.1 RAID Availability Concept

Data availability without downtime is essential for many types of data processing and storage systems. Businesses want to avoid the financial costs and customer frustration associated with failed servers. RAID helps you maintain data availability and avoid downtime for the servers that provide that data. RAID offers several features, such as spare drives and rebuilds, that you can use to fix any drive problems, while keeping the servers running and data available. The following subsections describe these features.

#### 2.7.1.1 Spare Drives

You can use spare drives to replace failed or defective drives in a drive group. A replacement drive must be at least as large as the drive it replaces. Spare drives include hot swaps, hot spares, and cold swaps.

A hot swap is the manual substitution of a replacement unit in a disk subsystem for a defective one, where the substitution can be performed while the subsystem is running (performing its normal functions).

The backplane and enclosure must support hot swap in order for the functionality to work.

Hot spare drives are drives that power up along with the RAID drives and operate in a standby state. If a drive used in a RAID virtual drive fails, a hot spare automatically takes its place and the data on the failed drive is rebuilt on the hot spare. Hot spares can be used for RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.

---

**NOTE:** If a rebuild to a hot spare fails for any reason, the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed." If the source drive fails, both the source drive and the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed."

---

A cold swap requires that you power down the system before replacing a defective drive in a disk subsystem.

### 2.7.1.2 Rebuilding

If a drive fails in a drive group that is configured as a RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60 virtual drive, you can recover the lost data by rebuilding the drive. If you have configured hot spares, the RAID controller automatically tries to use them to rebuild failed drives. Manual rebuild is necessary if no hot spares with enough capacity to rebuild the failed drives are available. You must insert a drive with enough storage into the subsystem before rebuilding the failed drive.

## 2.8 Configuration Planning

---

Factors to consider when planning a configuration are the number of drives the RAID controller can support, the purpose of the drive group, and the availability of spare drives.

Each type of data stored in the disk subsystem has a different frequency of read and write activity. If you know the data access requirements, you can more successfully determine a strategy for optimizing the disk subsystem capacity, availability, and performance.

Servers that support video on demand typically read the data often, but write data infrequently. Both the read and write operations tend to be long. Data stored on a general-purpose file server involves relatively short read and write operations with relatively small files.

## 2.9 Number of Drives

---

Your configuration planning for the SAS RAID controller depends in part on the number of drives that you want to use in a RAID drive group.

The number of drives in a drive group determines the RAID levels that can be supported. Only one RAID level can be assigned to each virtual drive.

### 2.9.1 Drive Group Purpose

---

Important factors to consider when creating RAID drive groups include availability, performance, and capacity. Define the major purpose of the drive group by answering questions related to these factors, such as the following, which are followed by suggested RAID levels for each situation:

- Will this drive group increase the system storage capacity for general-purpose file and print servers? Use RAID 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60.
- Does this drive group support any software system that must be available 24 hours per day? Use RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60.
- Will the information stored in this drive group contain large audio or video files that must be available on demand? Use RAID 0 or 00.
- Will this drive group contain data from an imaging system? Use RAID 0, 00, or 10.

Fill out [Table 17](#) to help you plan the drive group configuration. Rank the requirements for your drive group, such as storage space and data redundancy, in order of importance, and then review the suggested RAID levels.

**Table 17: Factors to Consider for Drive Group Configuration**

Requirement	Rank	Suggested RAID Level(s)
Storage space		RAID 0, RAID 5, RAID 00
Data redundancy		RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, RAID 60
Drive performance and throughput		RAID 0, RAID 00, RAID 10
Hot spares (extra drives required)		RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, RAID 60



# Chapter 3

## Full Disk Encryption

This chapter describes the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature

### 3.1 Overview

The Full Disk Encryption feature offers the ability to encrypt data on drives and use disk-based key management to provide data security. This solution provides data protection in the event of theft or loss of physical drives. With self-encrypting drives, if you remove a drive from its storage system or the server it is housed in, the data on that drive is encrypted and useless to anyone who attempts to access without the appropriate security authorization.

With the FDE feature, data is encrypted by the drives. You can designate which data to encrypt at the individual virtual disk (VD) level.

Any encryption solution requires management of the encryption keys. The security feature provides a way to manage these keys. Both the WebBIOS Configuration Utility ([Section 4.2, Starting the WebBIOS CU](#)) and MegaRAID Storage Manager ([Section 8.2, Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options](#)) offer procedures that you can use to manage the security settings for the drives.

### 3.2 Purpose

Security is a growing market concern and requirement. MegaRAID customers are looking for a comprehensive storage encryption solution to protect data. You can use the FDE feature to help protect your data.

### 3.3 Terminology

[Table 18](#) describes the terminology related to the FDE feature.

**Table 18: Terminology used in FDE**

Option	Description
Authenticated Mode	The RAID configuration is keyed to a user passphrase. The passphrase must be provided on system boot to authenticate the user and facilitate unlocking the configuration for user access to the encrypted data.
Blob	A blob is created by encrypting a key(s) using another key. There are two types of blob in the system – encryption key blob and security key blob.
Key backup	You need to provide the controller with a lock key if the controller is replaced or if you choose to migrate secure virtual disks. To do this, you must back up the security key.
Passphrase	An optional authenticated mode is supported in which you must provide a passphrase on each boot to make sure the system boots only if the user is authenticated. Firmware uses the user passphrase to encrypt the security key in the security key blob stored on the controller.
Re-provisioning	Re-provisioning disables the security system of a device. For a controller, it involves destroying the security key. For Full Disk (FDE) drives, when the drive lock key is deleted, the drive is unlocked and any user data on the drive is securely deleted. This does not apply to controller-encrypted drives, because deleting the virtual disk destroys the encryption keys and causes a secure erase. See <a href="#">Section 3.5, Instant Secure Erase</a> for information about the instant secure erase feature.

**Table 18: Terminology used in FDE (Continued)**

Option	Description
Security Key	A key based on a user-provided string. The controller uses the security key to lock and unlock access to the secure user data. This key is encrypted into the security key blob and stored on the controller. If the security key is unavailable, user data is irretrievably lost. You must take all precautions to never lose the security key.
Un-Authenticated Mode	This mode allows controller to boot and unlock access to user configuration without user intervention. In this mode, the security key is encrypted into a security key blob, stored on the controller, but instead of a user passphrase, an internal key specific to the controller is used to create the security key blob.
Volume Encryption Keys (VEK)	The controller uses the Volume Encryption Keys to encrypt data when a controller-encrypted virtual disk is created. These keys are not available to the user. The firmware (FW) uses a unique 512-bit key for each virtual disk. The VEK for the VDs are stored on the physical disks in a VEK blob.

## 3.4 Workflow

### 3.4.1 Enable Security

You can enable security on the controller. After you enable security, you have the option to create secure virtual drives using a security key.

There are three procedures you can perform to create secure virtual drives using a security key:

- Create the security key identifier
- Create the security key
- Create a pass phrase (optional)

See [Section 4.5, \*Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options\*](#) for the procedures used to enable security in WebBIOS or [Section 8.2, \*Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options\*](#) for the procedures used to enable security in MegaRAID Storage Manager.

#### 3.4.1.1 Create the Security Key Identifier

The security key identifier appears whenever you enter the security key. If you have multiple security keys, the identifier helps you determine which security key to enter. The controller provides a default identifier for you. You can use the default or enter your own identifier.

#### 3.4.1.2 Create the Security Key

You need to enter the security key to perform certain operations. You can choose a strong security key that the controller suggests.

---

**CAUTION:** If you forget the security key, you will lose access to your data.

---

#### 3.4.1.3 Create a Passphrase (Optional)

The pass phrase provides additional security. The pass phrase should be different from the security key. If you choose this option, you must enter it whenever you boot your server.

---

**CAUTION:** If you forget the pass phrase, you will lose access to your data.

---

When you use the specified security key identifier, security key, and pass phrase, security will be enabled on the controller.

### 3.4.2 Change Security

---

You can change the security settings on the controller, and you have the option to change the security key identifier, security key, and pass phrase. If you have previously removed any secured drives, you still need to supply the old security key to import them.

There are three procedures you can perform to change the security settings on the controller:

- Change the security key identifier
- Change the security key
- Change a pass phrase

See [Section 4.5, \*Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options\*](#) for the procedures used to change security options in WebBIOS or [Section 8.2, \*Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options\*](#) for the procedures used to change security options in MegaRAID Storage Manager.

#### 3.4.2.1 Change the Security Key Identifier

You have the option to edit the security key identifier. If you plan to change the security key, it is highly recommended that you change the security key identifier. Otherwise, you will not be able to differentiate between the security keys.

You can select whether you want to keep the current security key identifier or enter a new one. To change the security key identifier, enter a new security key identifier.

#### 3.4.2.2 Change the Security Key

You can choose to keep the current security key or enter a new one. To change the security key, you can either enter the new security key or accept the security key that the controller suggests.

#### 3.4.2.3 Add or Change the Pass Phrase

You have the option to add a pass phrase or change the existing one. To change the pass phrase, enter the new pass phrase. To keep the existing pass phrase, enter the current pass phrase. If you choose this option, you must enter the pass phrase whenever you boot your server.

This procedure updates the existing configuration on the controller to use the new security settings.

### 3.4.3 Create Secure Virtual Drives

---

You can create a secure virtual drive and set their parameters as desired. To create a secure virtual drive, select a configuration method. You can select either simple configuration or advanced configuration.

#### 3.4.3.1 Simple Configuration

If you select simple configuration, select the redundancy type and drive security method to use for the drive group.

See [Section 8.1.2, \*Creating a Virtual Drive Using Simple Configuration\*](#) for the procedures used to select the redundancy type and drive security method for a configuration.

#### 3.4.3.2 Advanced Configuration

If you select advanced configuration, select the drive security method, and add the drives to the drive group.

See [Section 8.1.3, \*Creating a Virtual Drive Using Advanced Configuration\*](#) for the procedures used to import a foreign configuration.

After the drive group is secured, you cannot remove the security without deleting the virtual drives.

### 3.4.4 Import a Foreign Configuration

After you create a security key, you can run a scan for a foreign configuration and import a locked configuration. (You can import unsecured or unlocked configurations when security is disabled.) A foreign configuration is a RAID configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system. WebBIOS Configuration Utility and MSM allows you to import the existing configuration to the RAID controller or clear the configuration so you can create a new one.

See [Section 4.5.4, Importing Foreign Configurations](#) for the procedure used to import a foreign configuration in WebBIOS or [Section 8.2.4, Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration](#) for the procedure in MegaRAID Storage Manager.

To import a foreign configuration, you must first enable security to allow importation of locked foreign drives. If the drives are locked and the controller security is disabled, you cannot import the foreign drives. Only unlocked drives can be imported when security is disabled.

After you enable the security, you can import the locked drives. To import the locked drives, you must provide the security key used to secure them. Verify whether any drives are left to import as the locked drives can use different security keys. If there are any drives left, repeat the import process for the remaining drives. After all of the drives are imported, there is no configuration to import.

### 3.5 Instant Secure Erase

Instant Secure Erase is a method of data erasure that you can use with FDE drives. After the initial investment into a FDE disk, there is no additional cost in dollars or time to erase data using the Instant Secure Erase feature.

You can change the encryption key for all MegaRAID RAID controllers that are connected to FDE disks. All FDE drives, whether locked or unlocked, always have an encryption key. This key is set by the drive and is always active. When the drive is unlocked, the data to host from the drive (on reads) and from the host to the drive cache (on writes) is always provided. However, when resting on the drive platters, the data is always encrypted by the drive.

You might not want to lock your drives because you have to manage a password if they are locked. Even if you do not lock the drives, there is still a benefit to using FDE disks.

If you are concerned about data theft or other security issues, you might already invest in drive disposal costs, and there are benefits to using FDE over other technologies that exists today, both in terms of the security provided and time saved.

If the encryption key on the drive changes, the drive cannot decrypt the data on the platters, effectively erasing the data on the disks. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (<http://www.nist.gov>) values this type of data erasure above secure erase and below physical destruction of the device.

There are four major reasons for using instant secure erase.

**If there is a need to repurpose the hard drive for a different application.** You might need to move the drive to another server to expand storage elsewhere, but the drive is in use. The data on the drive might contain sensitive data including customer information that, if lost or divulged, could cause an embarrassing disclosure of a security hole. You can use the instant secure erase feature to effectively erase the data so the drive can be moved to another server or area without concern that old data could be found.

**If there is a need to replace drives.** If the amount of data has outgrown the storage system, and there is no room to expand capacity by adding drives, you might choose to purchase upgrade drives. If the older drives support FDE, you can erase the data instantly so the new drives can be used.

**If there is a need to return a disk for warranty activity.** If the drive is beginning to show SMART predictive failure alerts, you might want to return the drive for replacement. If so, the drive needs to be effectively erased if there is sensitive data. Occasionally a drive is in such bad condition that standard erasure applications do not work. If the drive still allows any access, it might be possible to destroy the encryption key.



# Chapter 4

## WebBIOS Configuration Utility

This chapter describes the WebBIOS Configuration Utility (CU), which enables you to create and manage RAID configurations on LSI SAS controllers

### 4.1 Overview

The WebBIOS CU, unlike the MegaRAID Storage Manager™ software, resides in the SAS controller BIOS and operates independently of the operating system.

You can use the WebBIOS CU to do the following tasks:

- Create drive groups and virtual drives for storage configurations
- Display controller, virtual drive, drive, and battery backup unit (BBU) properties, and change parameters
- Delete virtual drives
- Migrate a storage configuration to a different RAID level
- Detect configuration mismatches
- Import a foreign configuration
- Scan devices connected to the controller
- Initialize virtual drives
- Check configurations for data consistency

The WebBIOS CU provides a configuration wizard to guide you through the configuration of virtual drives and drive groups.

### 4.2 Starting the WebBIOS CU

Follow these steps to start the WebBIOS CU and access the main screen.

1. When the host computer is booting, hold down the <Ctrl> key and press the <H> key when the following text appears on the screen:

```
Copyright© LSI Corporation  
Press <Ctrl><H> for WebBIOS
```

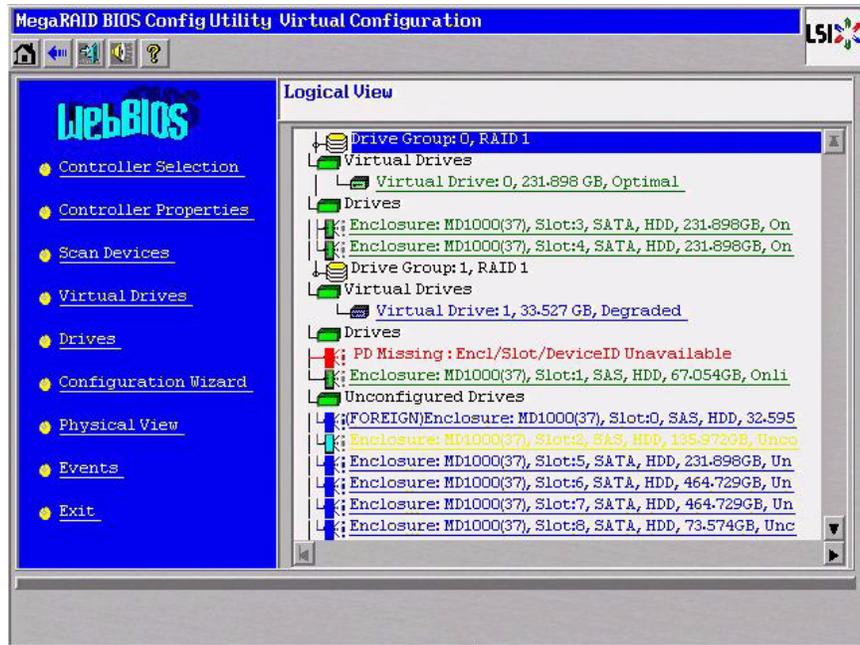
The Controller Selection screen appears.

2. If the system has multiple SAS controllers, select a controller.
3. Click **Start** to continue.

The main WebBIOS CU screen appears.

### 4.3 WebBIOS CU Main Screen Options

Figure 15 shows the screen that appears when you start the WebBIOS CU and select a controller.



**Figure 15: WebBIOS CU Main Screen**

In the right frame, the screen shows the virtual drives configured on the controller, and the drives that are connected to the controller. In addition, the screen identifies drives that are foreign or missing.

**NOTE:** In the list of virtual drives, the drive nodes are sorted based on the order in which you added the drives to the drive group, rather than the physical slot order that displays in the physical trees.

**NOTE:** The minimum screen resolution for WebBIOS is 640x480.

To toggle between the physical view and logical view of the storage devices connected to the controller, click **Physical View** or **Logical View** in the menu on the left. When the physical view screen appears, it shows the drive groups that are configured on this controller.

For drives in an enclosure, the screen shows the following drive information:

- Enclosure
- Slot
- Interface type (such as SAS or SATA)
- Drive type (HDD or SSD)
- Drive size
- Drive status (such as **Online** or **Unconfigured Good**)

The toolbar at the top of the WebBIOS CU has the following buttons, as listed in [Table 19](#).

**Table 19: WebBIOS CU Toolbar Icons**

Icon	Description
	Click this icon to return to the main screen from any other WebBIOS CU screen.
	Click this icon to return to the previous screen that you were viewing.
	Click this icon to exit the WebBIOS CU program.
	Click this icon to turn off the sound on the onboard controller alarm.
	Click this icon to display information about the WebBIOS CU version, browser version, and HTML interface engine.

Here is a description of the options listed on the left of the main WebBIOS CU screen:

- **Controller Selection:** Select this option to view the Controller Selection screen, where you can select a different SAS controller. You can then view information about the controller and the devices connected to it, or create a new configuration on the controller.
- **Controller Properties:** Select this option to view the properties of the currently selected SAS controller. For more information, see [Section 4.6.1, Viewing and Changing Controller Properties](#)
- **Scan Devices:** Select this option to have the WebBIOS CU re-scan the physical and virtual drives for any changes in the drive status or the physical configuration. The WebBIOS CU displays the results of the scan in the physical and virtual drive descriptions.
- **Virtual Drives:** Select this option to view the Virtual Drives screen, where you can change and view virtual drive properties, delete virtual drives, initialize drives, and perform other tasks. For more information, see [Section 4.6.2, Viewing and Changing Virtual Drive Properties](#)
- **Drives:** Select this option to view the Drives screen, where you can view drive properties, create hot spares, and perform other tasks. For more information, see [Section 4.6.3, Viewing Drive Properties](#)
- **Configuration Wizard:** Select this option to start the Configuration Wizard and create a new storage configuration, clear a configuration, or add a configuration. For more information, see [Section 4.4, Creating a Storage Configuration](#)

- **Physical View/Logical View:** Select this option to toggle between the Physical View and Logical View screens.
- **Events:** Select this option to view system events in the Event Information screen. For more information, see [Section 4.7, Viewing System Event Information](#)
- **Exit:** Select this option to exit the WebBIOS CU and continue with system boot.

## 4.4 Creating a Storage Configuration

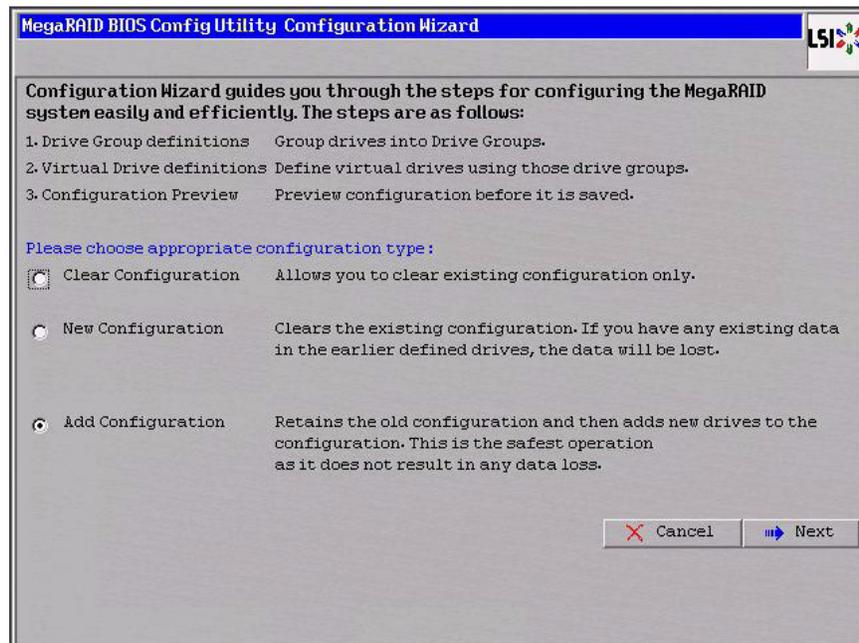
### 4.4.1 Selecting the Configuration with the Configuration Wizard

This section explains how to use the WebBIOS CU Configuration Wizard to configure RAID drive groups and virtual drives to create storage configurations:

Follow these steps to start the Configuration Wizard, and select a configuration option and mode:

1. Click **Configuration Wizard** on the WebBIOS main screen.

The first Configuration Wizard screen appears, as shown in [Figure 16](#).



**Figure 16: WebBIOS Configuration Wizard Screen**

2. Select a configuration option.

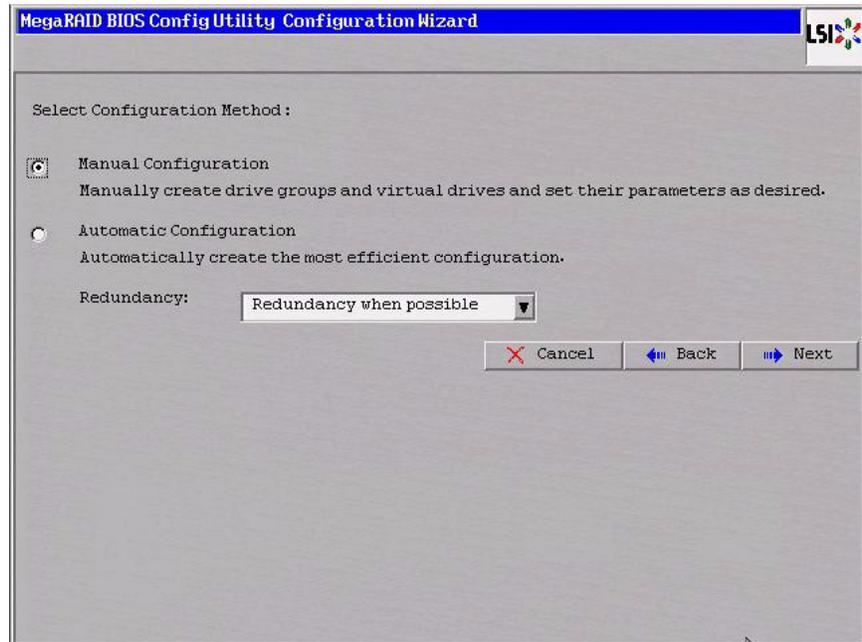
**CAUTION:** If you choose the first or second option, all existing data in the configuration will be deleted. Make a backup of any data that you want to keep before you choose an option.

- **Clear Configuration:** Clears the existing configuration.
- **New Configuration:** Clears the existing configuration and lets you create a new configuration.
- **Add Configuration:** Retains the existing storage configuration and adds new drives to it (this does not cause any data loss).

3. Click **Next**.

A dialog box warns that you will lose data if you select Clear Configuration or New Configuration.

The WebBIOS Configuration Method screen appears, as shown in [Figure 17](#).



**Figure 17: WebBIOS Configuration Method Screen**

4. On this screen, select a configuration mode:

- **Manual Configuration:** Allows you to control all attributes of the new storage configuration as you create drive groups and virtual drives, and set their parameters.
- **Automatic Configuration:** Automatically creates an optimal RAID configuration.
- If you select Automatic Configuration, you can choose whether to create a redundant RAID drive group or a non-redundant RAID 0 drive group. Select one of the following options in the Redundancy field:

**Redundancy when possible**

**No redundancy**

5. Click **Next** to continue.

If you select the Automatic Configuration option, continue with [Section 4.4.2, Using Automatic Configuration](#) If you select Manual Configuration, continue with [Section 4.4.3, Using Manual Configuration](#)

#### **4.4.2 Using Automatic Configuration**

Follow these instructions to create a configuration with automatic configuration, either with or without redundancy:

1. When WebBIOS displays the proposed new configuration, review the information on the screen, and click **Accept** to accept it. (Or click **Back** to go back and change the configuration.)

- **RAID 0:** If you select Automatic Configuration and No Redundancy, WebBIOS creates a RAID 0 configuration.
  - **RAID 1:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **Redundancy when possible**, and only two drives are available, WebBIOS creates a RAID 1 configuration.
  - **RAID 5:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **Redundancy when possible**, and three or more drives are available, WebBIOS creates a RAID 5 configuration.
  - **RAID 6:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **Redundancy when possible**, and the RAID 6 option is enabled, and three or more drives are available, WebBIOS creates a RAID 6 configuration.
2. Click **Yes** when you are prompted to save the configuration.
  3. Click **Yes** when you are prompted to initialize the new virtual drive(s).

WebBIOS CU begins a background initialization of the virtual drives.

### 4.4.3 Using Manual Configuration

#### 4.4.3.1 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 0

This section contains the procedures for creating RAID drive groups for RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 6, 00, 10, 50, and 60.

RAID 0 provides drive striping across all drives in the RAID drive group. RAID 0 does not provide any data redundancy but does offer excellent performance. RAID 0 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. RAID 0 also denotes an independent or single drive.

---

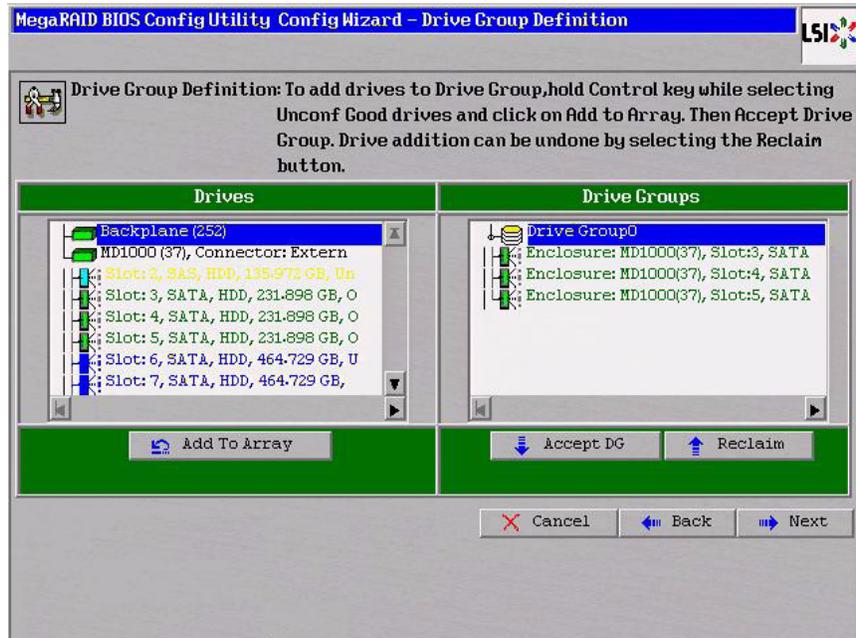
**NOTE:** RAID level 0 is not fault-tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) fails.

---

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the drive group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting two or more ready drives in the Drives panel on the left until you have selected all desired drives for the drive group.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 18](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

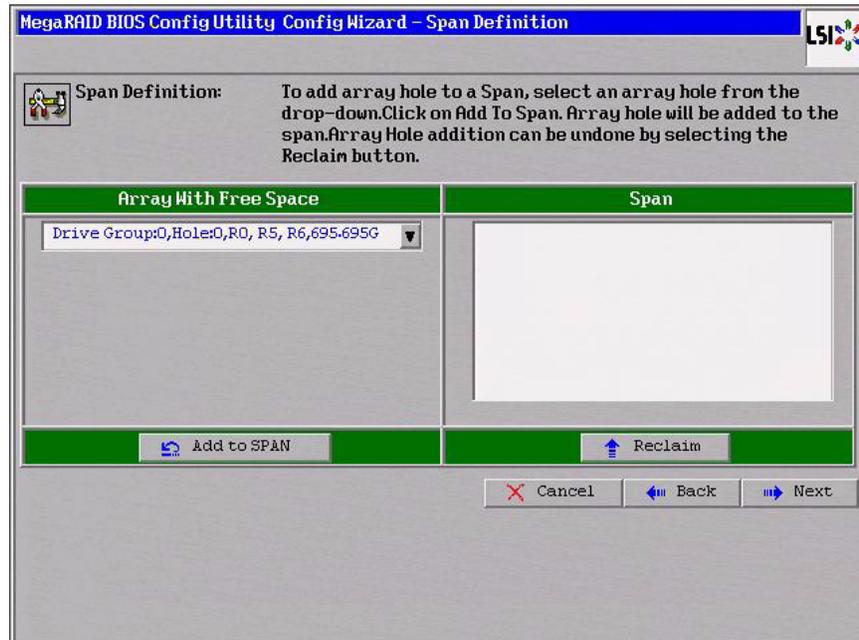


**Figure 18: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG**.
4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 19](#). This screen lists the possible RAID levels for the drive group.

Use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.



**Figure 19: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 0.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.

*Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct:* In direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.

*Cached:* In cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Cache:** Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable:* Enable the drive cache.

*Disable:* Disable the drive cache.

*NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This is the default.

- **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:

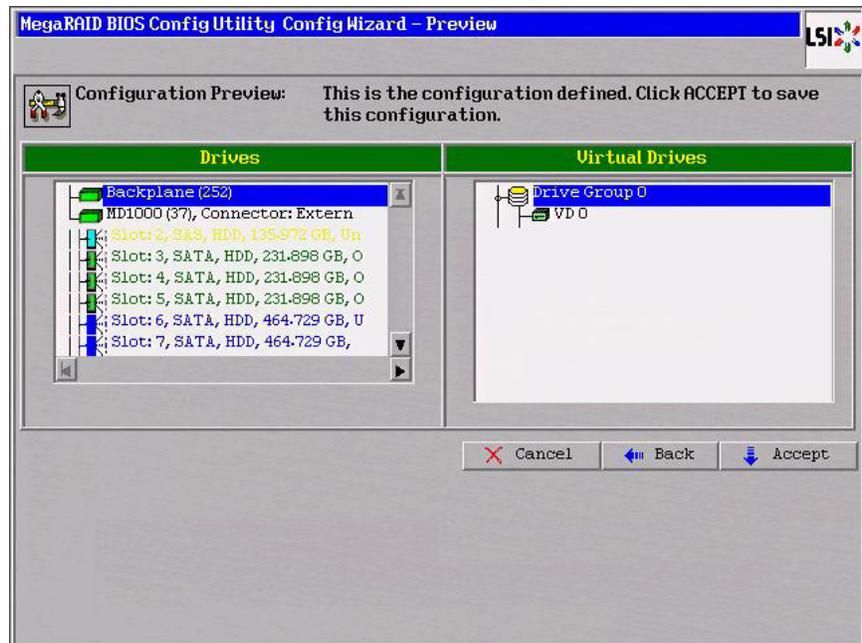
*No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.

*Yes:* Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 0 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.

6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in Figure 20.



**Figure 20: RAID 0 Configuration Preview**

8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.2 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 1

In RAID 1, the RAID controller duplicates all data from one drive to a second drive. RAID 1 provides complete data redundancy, but at the cost of doubling the required data storage capacity. It is appropriate for small databases or any other environment that requires fault tolerance but small capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

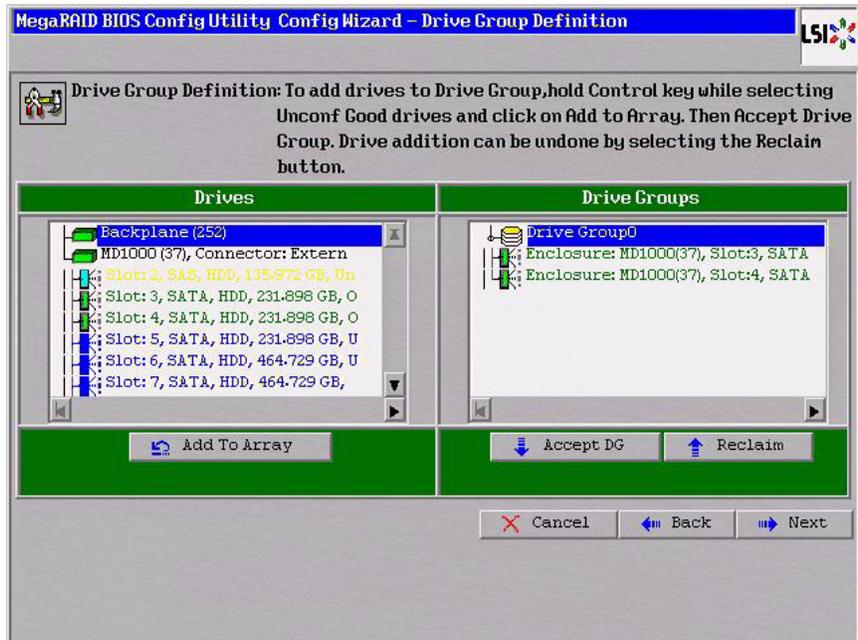
1. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two ready drives in the Drives panel on the left. You must select an even number of drives.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in Figure 21.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

---

**NOTE:** A RAID 1 virtual drive can contain up to 16 drive groups and 32 drives in a single span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.) You must use two drives in each RAID 1 drive group in the span.

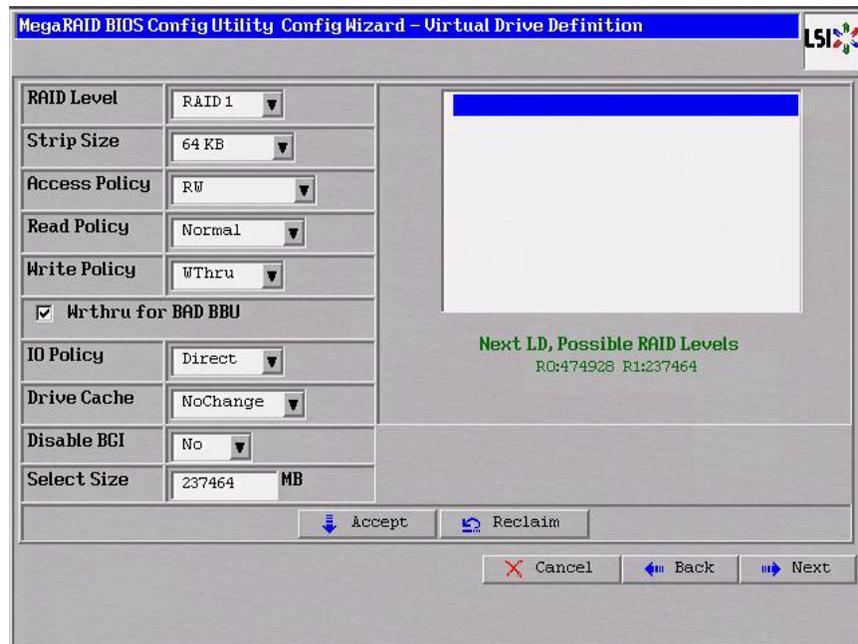
---



**Figure 21: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG**.
4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 22](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.



**Figure 22: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 1.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

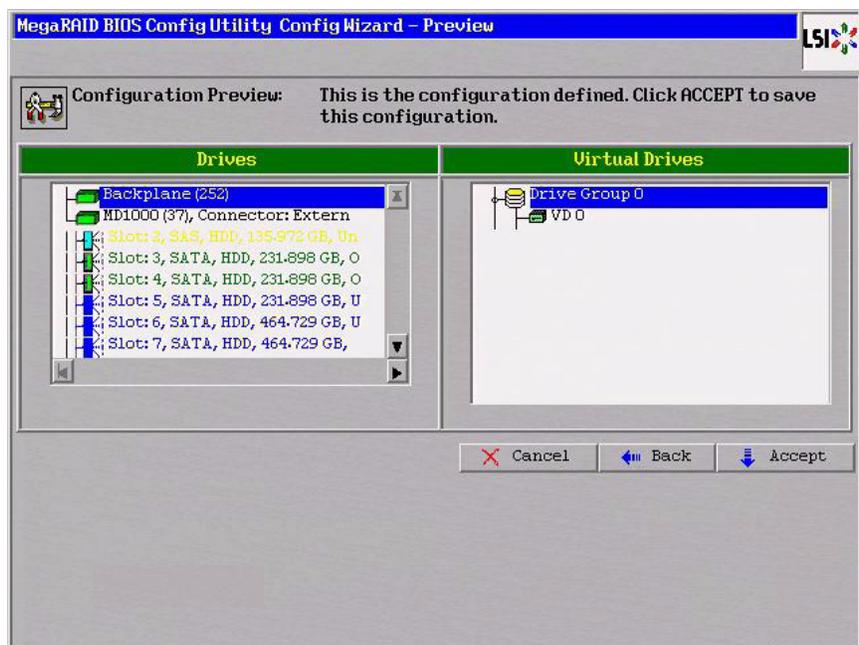
---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive(s) in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 1 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 23](#).



**Figure 23: RAID 1 Configuration Preview**

8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.3 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 5

RAID 5 uses drive striping at the block level and parity. In RAID 5, the parity information is written to all drives. It is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously. RAID 5 provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. It also provides redundancy with lowest loss of capacity.

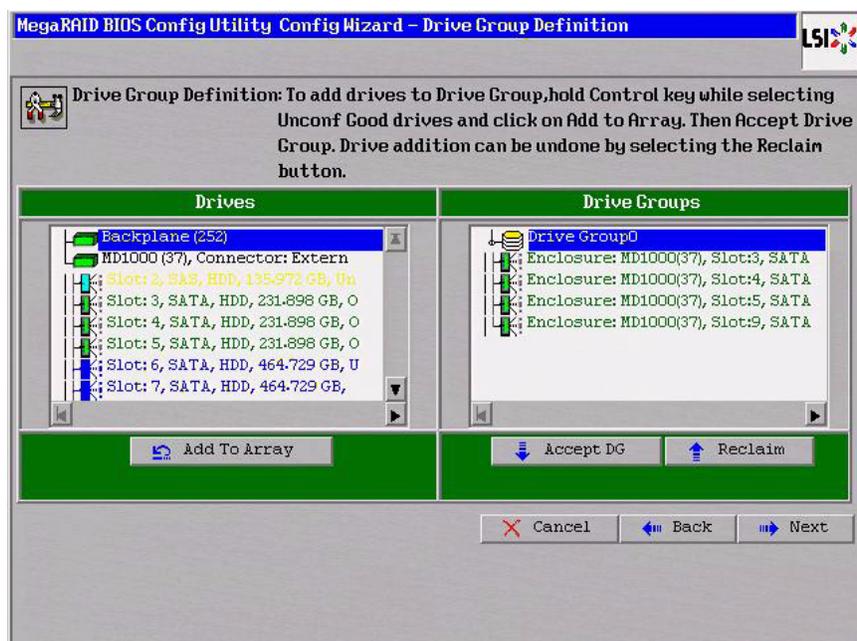
RAID 5 provides high data throughput. RAID 5 is useful for transaction processing applications because each drive can read and write independently. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity drive to recreate all missing information. You can use RAID 5 for office automation and online customer service that require fault tolerance.

In addition, RAID 5 is good for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while you select at least three ready drives in the Physical Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 24](#).

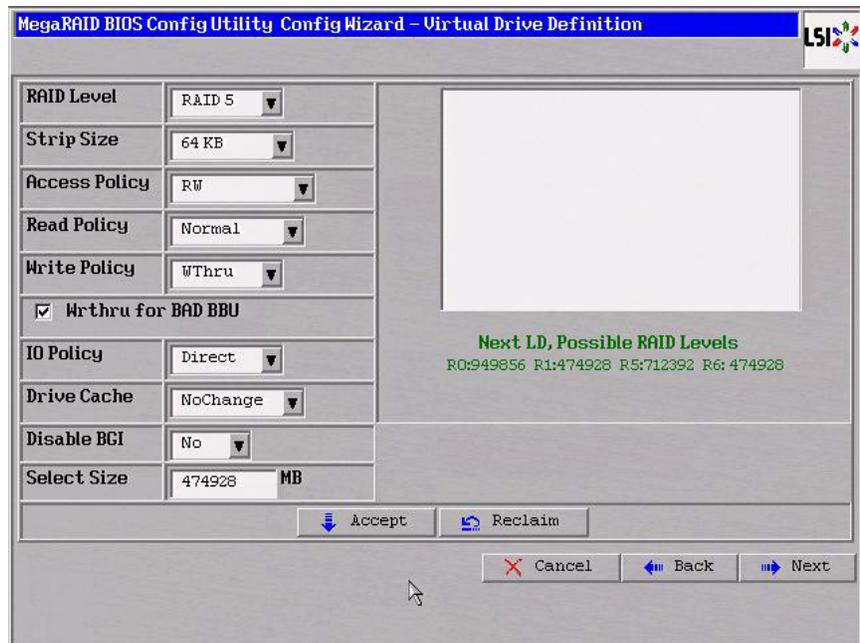
If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.



**Figure 24: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG**.
4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 25](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.



**Figure 25: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 5.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.

*Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.

*Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.

*Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable:* Enable the drive cache.

*Disable:* Disable the drive cache.

*NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.

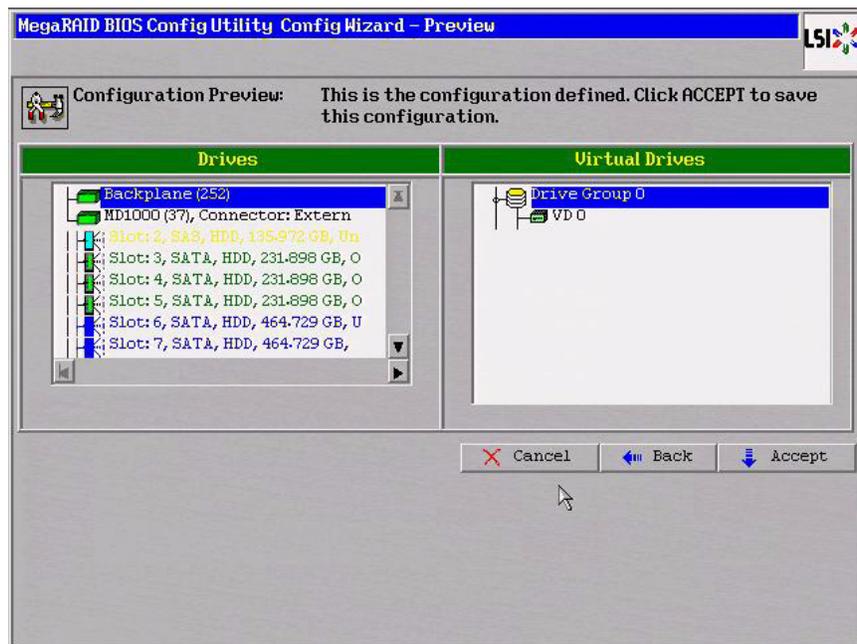
- **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:

*No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.

*Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 5 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in Figure 26.



**Figure 26: RAID 5 Configuration Preview**

8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to end the operation and return to the WebBIOS main menu, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.4 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 6

RAID 6 is similar to RAID 5 (drive striping and distributed parity), except that instead of one parity block per stripe, there are two. With two independent parity blocks, RAID 6 can survive the loss of two drives in a virtual drive without losing data. Use RAID 6 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

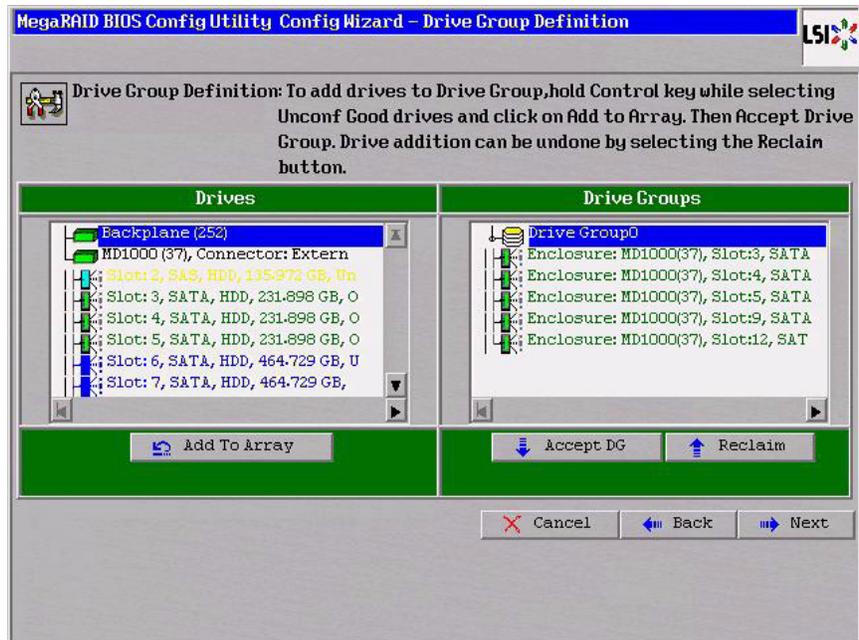
RAID 6 is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously. It provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments.

In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to recreate all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds do not occur at the same time. The controller rebuilds one failed drive, and then the other failed drive.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the drive Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 27](#).

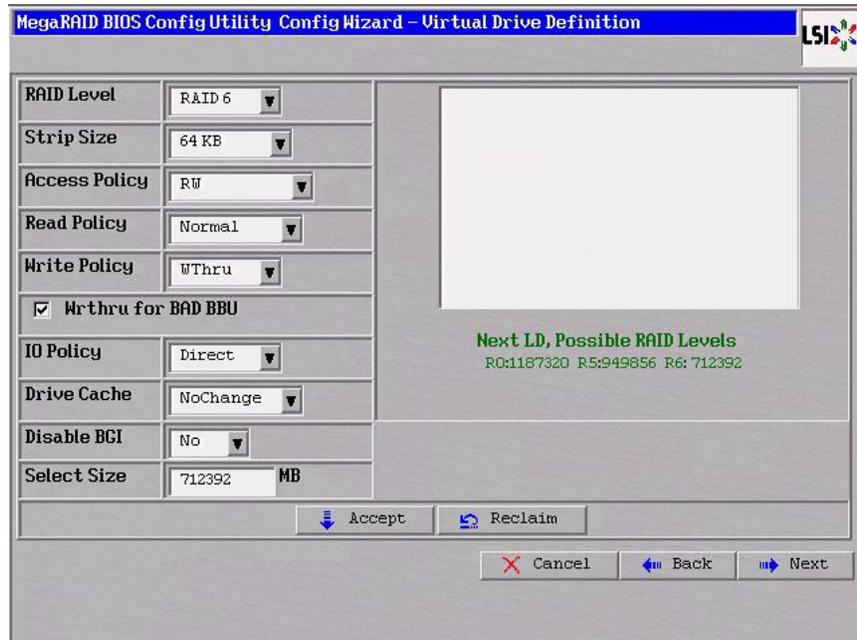
If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.



**Figure 27: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG** for each.
4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 28](#). Use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.



**Figure 28: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

1. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 6.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.

---

**NOTE:** WebBIOS does not allow you to select 8 Kbytes as the stripe size when you create a RAID 6 drive group with three drives.

---

- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.

*Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction.

This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.

*Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.

*Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable:* Enable the drive cache.

*Disable:* Disable the drive cache.

*NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.

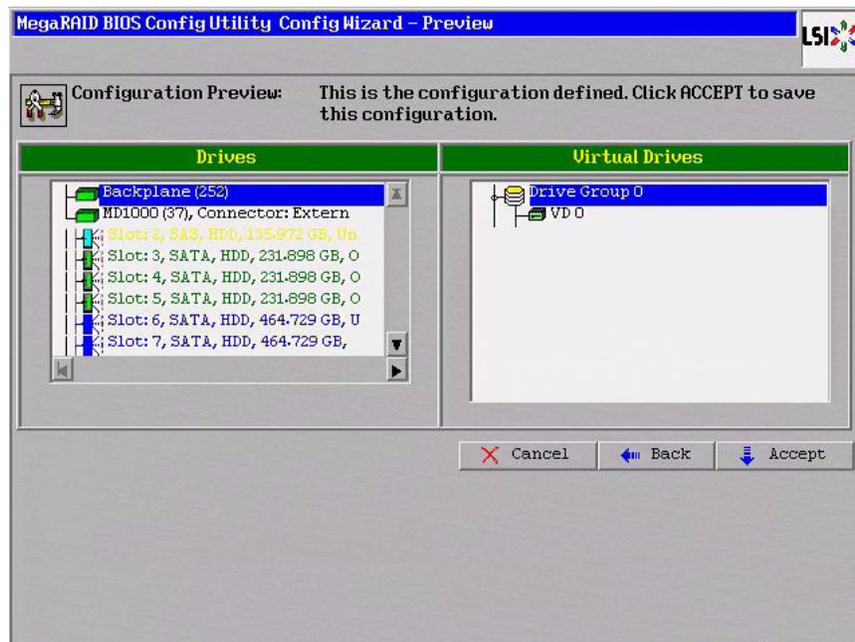
- **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:

*No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.

*Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 6 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
2. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  3. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in Figure 29.



**Figure 29: RAID 6 Configuration Preview**

4. Check the information in the configuration preview.
5. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
6. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.5 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 00

A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups. It breaks up data into smaller blocks and then stripes the blocks of data to RAID 00 drive groups.

The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is 64 Kbytes.

RAID 00 does not provide any data redundancy but does offer excellent performance. RAID 00 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears.

You use the Disk Group Definition screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while you select ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 0 drive group.

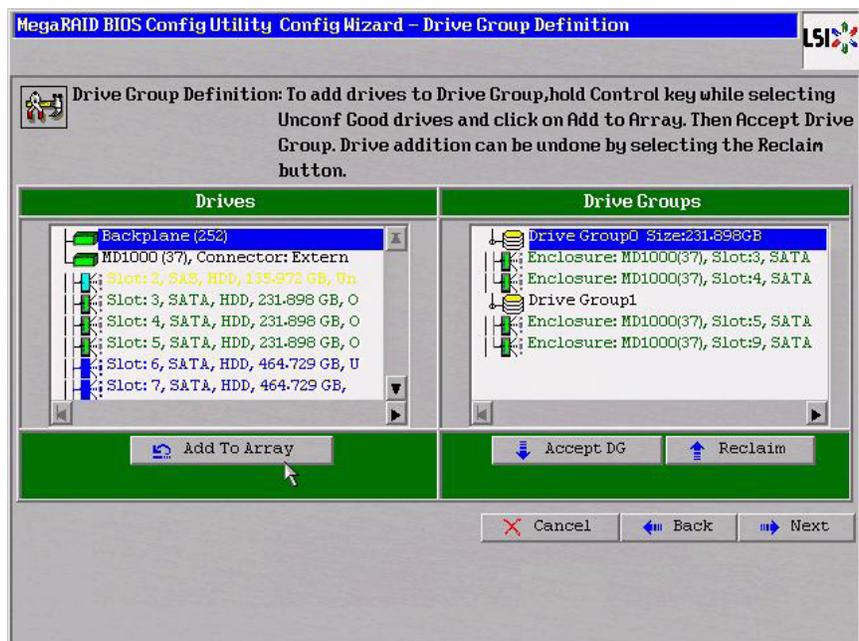
An icon for the next drive group appears in the right panel.

4. Hold <Ctrl> while you select more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second RAID 0 drive group.
5. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a second drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel, as shown in [Figure 34](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

**NOTE:** RAID 00 supports a maximum of eight spans, with a maximum of 32 drives per span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.)

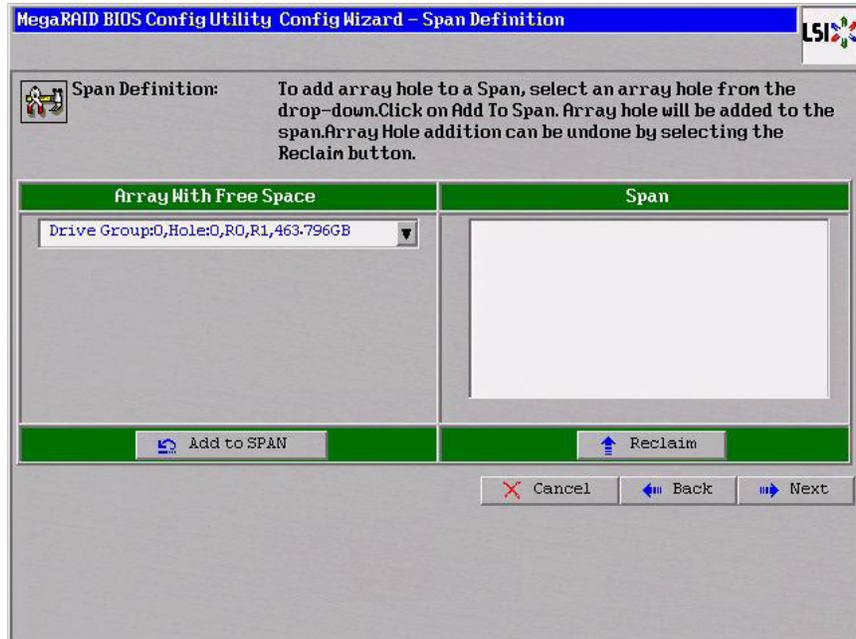
6. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 0 drive group.



**Figure 30: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

7. Repeat steps 4 through 6 until you have selected all the drives you want for the drive groups.
8. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and then click **Accept DG** for each selection.
9. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 31](#). This screen shows the drive group holes that you can select to add to a span.



**Figure 31: WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**

10. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group, and then click **Add to SPAN**.

The drive group you select appears in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

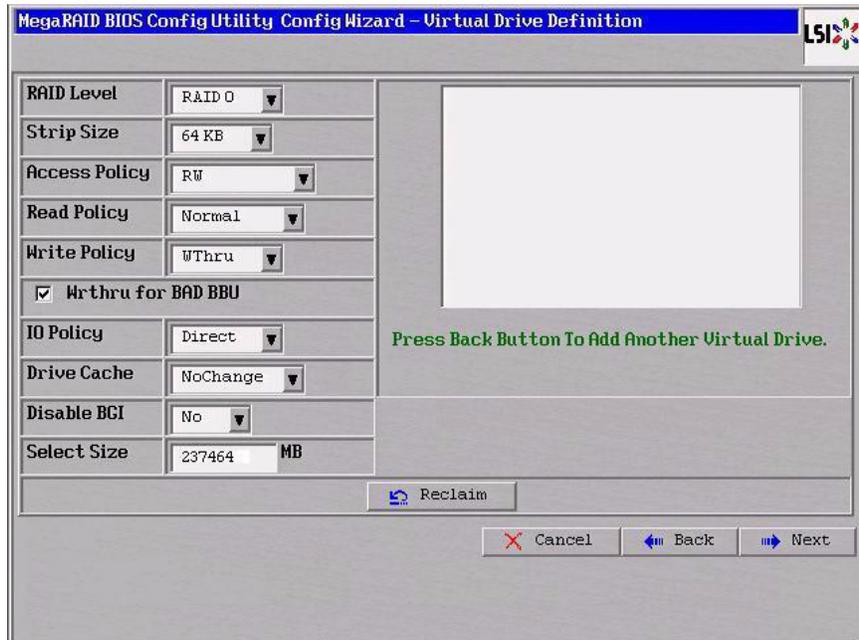
11. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group, and then click **Add to SPAN**.

12. Repeat the previous two steps until you have selected all of the drive groups that you want.

13. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 36](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

14. Hold <Ctrl> while you select drive groups in the Configuration panel on the right.



**Figure 32: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

15. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 0.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access. This type of access is the default.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This option disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - Ahead:* This option enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive*: When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack*: In Writeback mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru*: In Writethrough mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.

*Bad BBU*: Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. To protect the entire system, LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS). If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. The policy does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct*: In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, the block comes from cache memory. This setting is the default.

*Cached*: In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable*: Enable the drive cache.

*Disable*: Disable the drive cache.

*NoChange*: Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This setting is the default.

- **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:

*No*: Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This setting is the default.

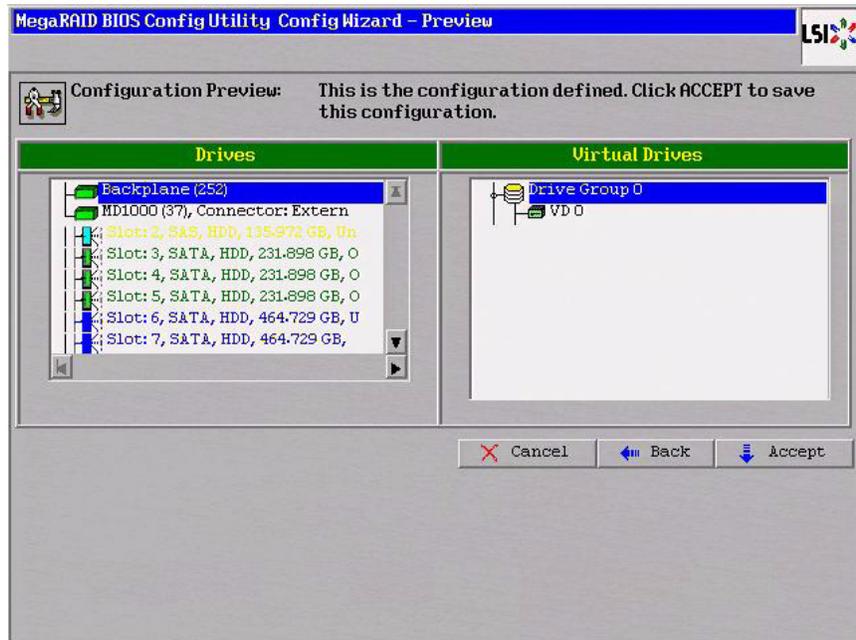
*Yes*: Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 00 shown in the Configuration Panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.

16. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.

17. When you are finished defining virtual drives, click **Next**.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 33](#).



**Figure 33: RAID 00 Configuration Preview**

18. Check the information in the configuration preview.
19. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to end the operation and return to the WebBIOS main menu, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
20. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.  
The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.6 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 10

RAID 10, a combination of RAID 1 and RAID 0, has mirrored drives. It breaks up data into smaller blocks, then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID 1 drive group. Each RAID 1 drive group then duplicates its data to its other drive. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is 64 Kbytes. RAID 10 can sustain one drive failure in each drive group while maintaining data integrity.

RAID 10 provides both high data transfer rates and complete data redundancy. It works best for data storage that must have 100 percent redundancy of RAID 1 (mirrored drive groups) and that also needs the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups); it works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears.

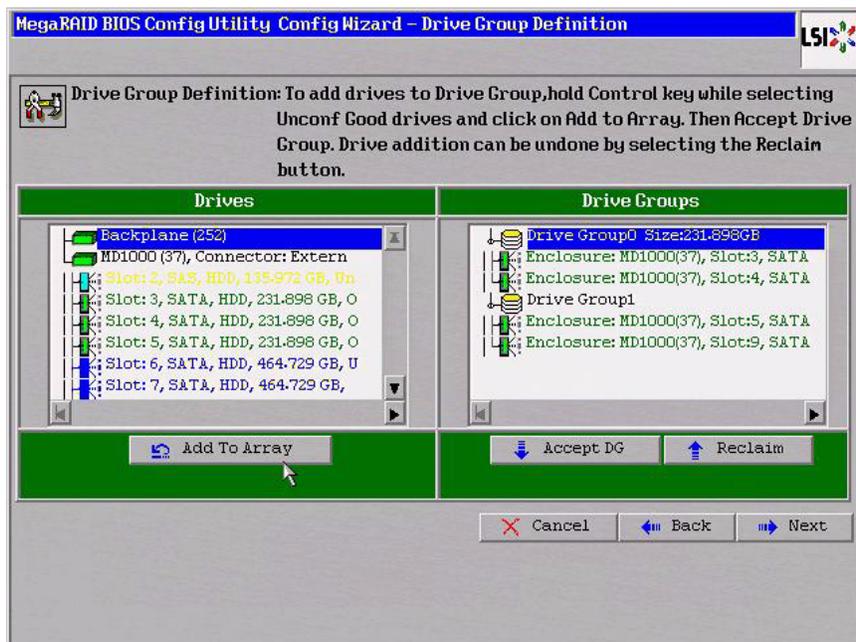
You use the Drive Group Definition screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting two ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed two-drive drive group configuration in the Drive Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 1 drive group.  
An icon for the next drive group displays in the right panel.
4. Click on the icon for the next drive group to select it.
5. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting two more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second RAID 1 drive group with two drives.
6. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a second two-drive drive group configuration in the Drive Groups panel, as shown in [Figure 34](#).  
If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

**NOTE:** RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans, with a maximum of 32 drives per span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.) You must use an even number of drives in each RAID 10 drive group in the span.

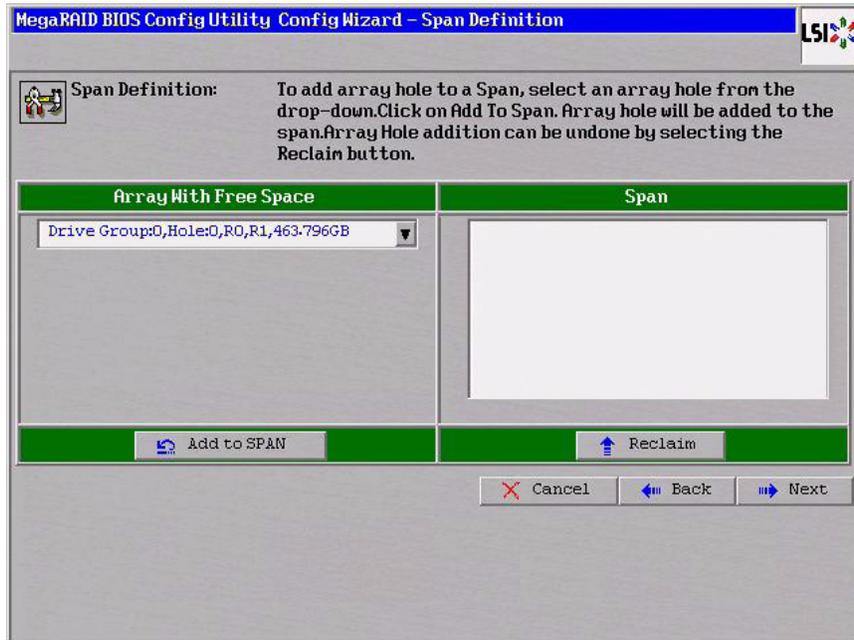


**Figure 34: WebBIOS Drive Group Definition Screen**

7. Repeat the previous three steps until you have selected all the drives you want for the drive groups.
8. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and click **Accept DG** for each.
9. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 35](#).

This screen displays the drive group holes you can select to add to a span.



**Figure 35: WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**

10. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group with two drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

The drive group you select displays in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

11. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group with two drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

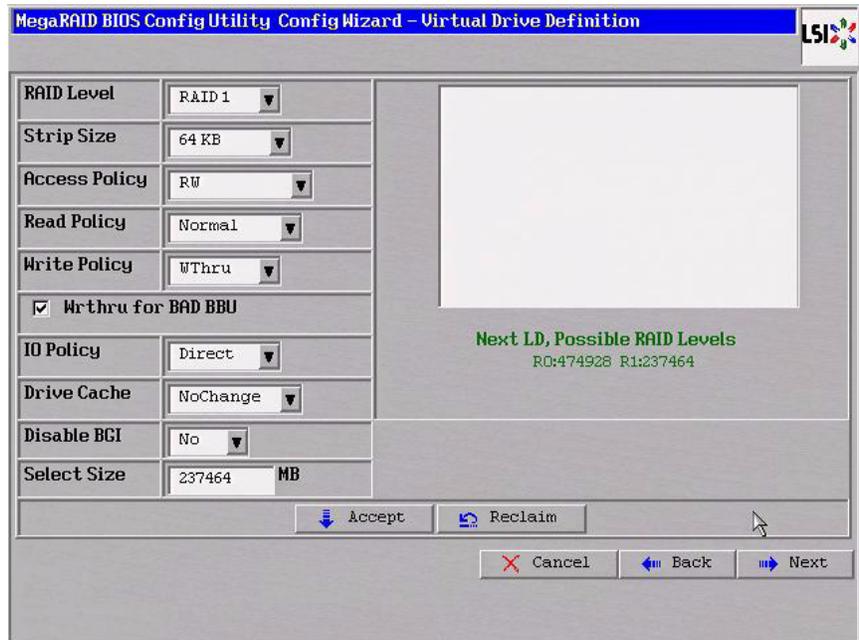
Both drive groups display in the right frame under **Span**.

12. If there are additional drive groups with two drives each, you can add them to the virtual drive.

13. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 36](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

14. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two drive groups with two drives in the Configuration panel on the right.



**Figure 36: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

**NOTE:** The WebBIOS Configuration Utility shows the maximum available capacity while creating the RAID 10 drive group. In version 1.03 of the utility, the maximum size of the RAID 10 drive group is the sum total of the two RAID 1 drive groups. In version 1.1, the maximum size is the size of the smaller drive group multiplied by two.

15. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 10.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access. This is the default.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.

*Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.

*Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.

*Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable:* Enable the drive cache.

*Disable:* Disable the drive cache.

*NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.

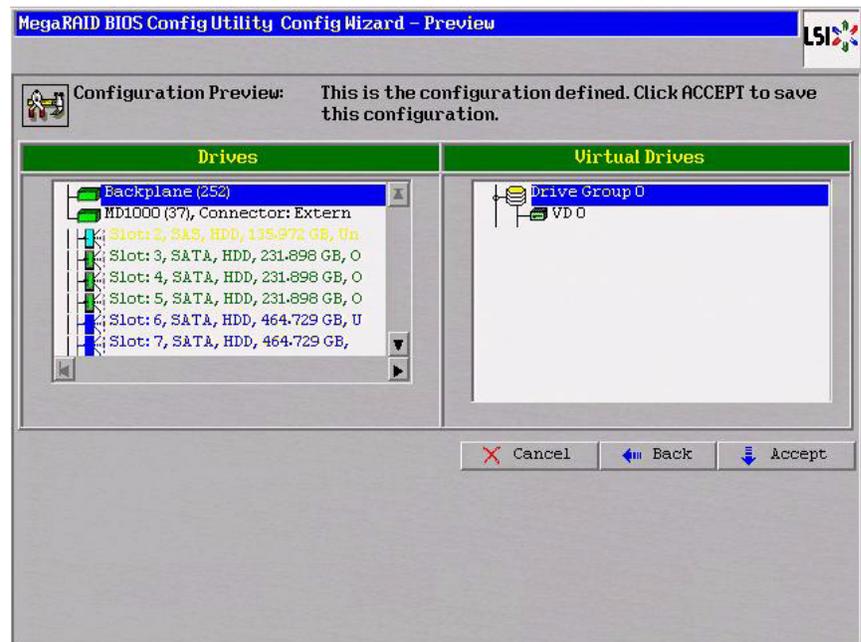
- **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:

*No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.

*Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 10 shown in the configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
16. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  17. When you are finished defining virtual drives, click **Next**.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in Figure 37.



**Figure 37: RAID 10 Configuration Preview**

18. Check the information in the configuration preview.
19. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to end the operation and return to the WebBIOS main menu, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
20. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.7 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 50

RAID 50 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 5. RAID 50 uses both distributed parity and drive striping across multiple drive groups.

It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. It is best implemented on two RAID 5 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups. Though multiple drive failures can be tolerated, only one drive failure can be tolerated in each RAID 5 level drive group.

RAID 50 is appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfer, and medium to large capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive group.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right.

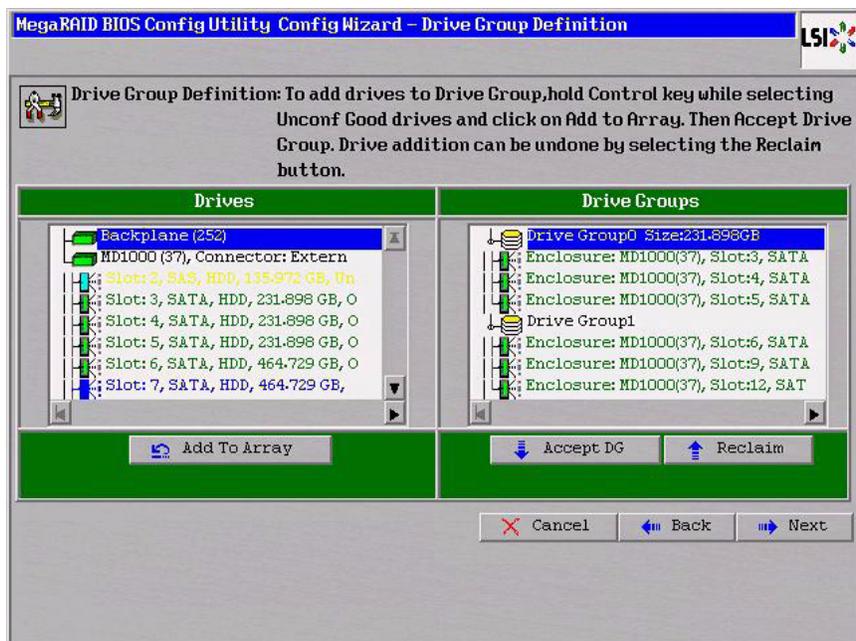
If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 5 drive group.

An icon for a second drive group displays in the right panel.

4. Click on the icon for the second drive group to select it.
5. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second drive group.
6. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 38](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

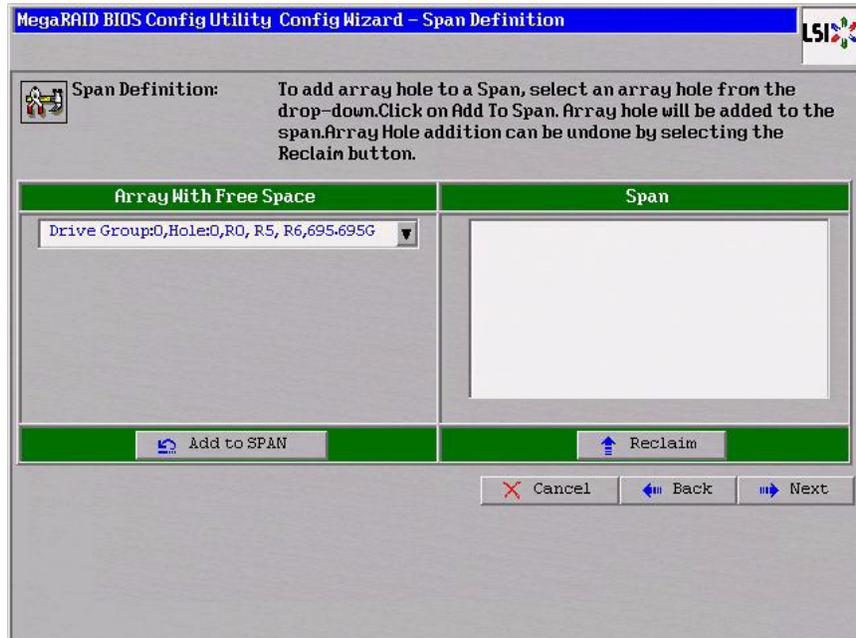


**Figure 38: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

7. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and click **Accept DG** for each.
8. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 39](#).

This screen displays the drive group holes you can select to add to a span.



**Figure 39: WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**

9. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

The drive group you select displays in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

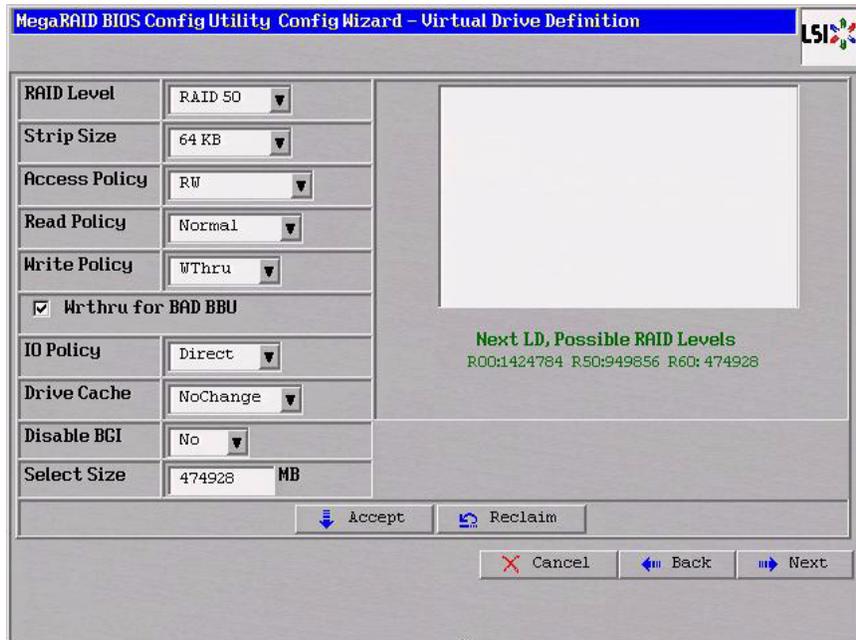
10. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

Both drive groups display in the right frame under **Span**.

11. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 40](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drive(s).

12. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two 3-drive drive groups in the Configuration panel on the right.



**Figure 40: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

13. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 50.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access. This is the default.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive*: When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy**: Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack*: In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction.

This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru*: In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.

This is the default.

*Bad BBU*: Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy**: The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct*: In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.

*Cached*: In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Policy**: Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable*: Enable the drive cache.

*Disable*: Disable the drive cache. This drive policy is the default.

*NoChange*: Leave the current drive cache policy as is.  
This is the default.

- **Disable BGI**: Specify the background initialization status:

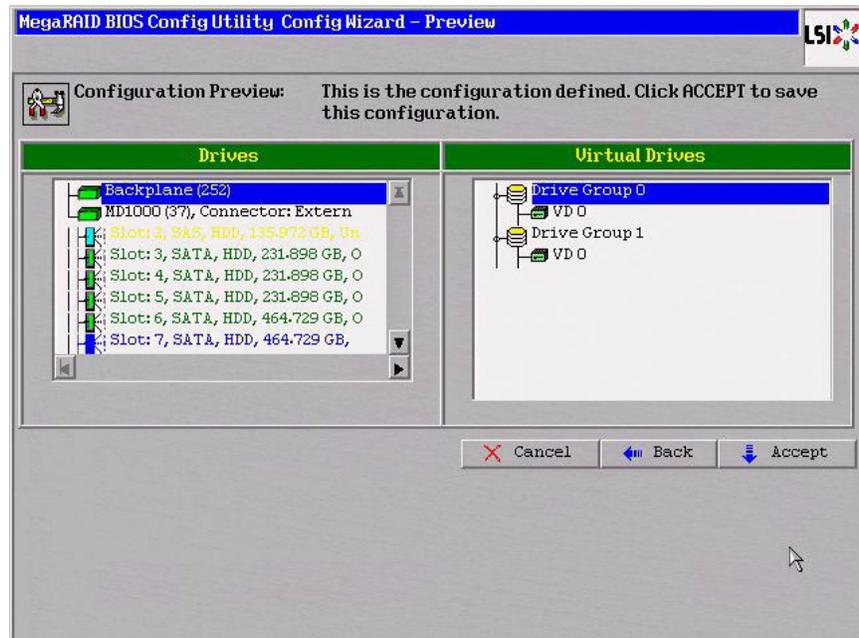
*No*: Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.

*Yes*: Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size**: Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 50 shown in the Configuration Panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.

14. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
15. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 41](#).



**Figure 41: RAID 50 Configuration Preview**

16. Check the information in the configuration preview.
17. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
18. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 4.4.3.8 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 60

RAID 60 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 6, and includes both parity and drive striping across multiple drive groups. RAID 6 supports two independent parity blocks per stripe. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. RAID 60 is best implemented on two RAID 6 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups. Use RAID 60 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

RAID 60 can support up to eight spans and tolerate up to 16 drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Two drive failures can be tolerated in each RAID 6 level drive group.

RAID 60 is appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfer, and medium to large capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

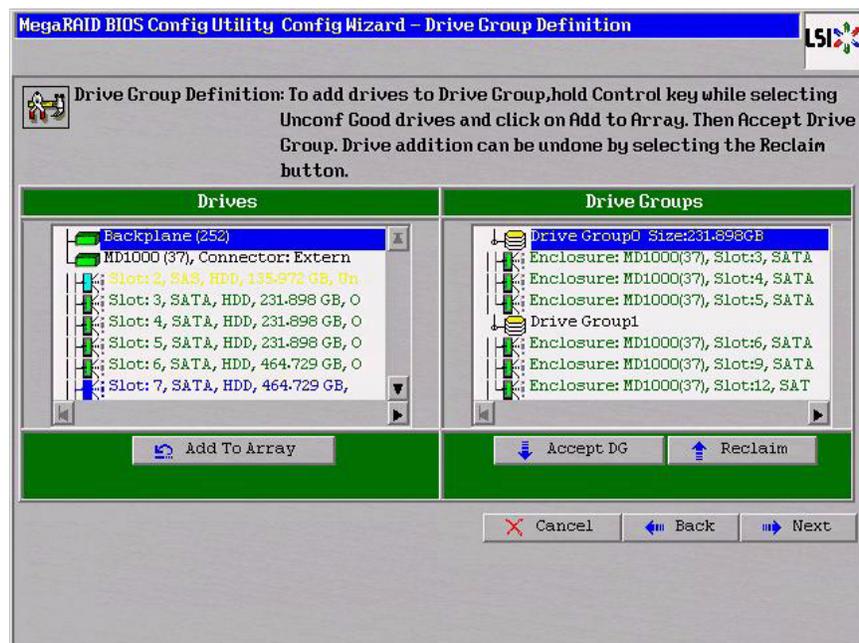
1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 6 drive group.
 

An icon for a second drive group displays in the right panel.
4. Click on the icon for the second drive group to select it.
5. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second drive group.
6. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 42](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

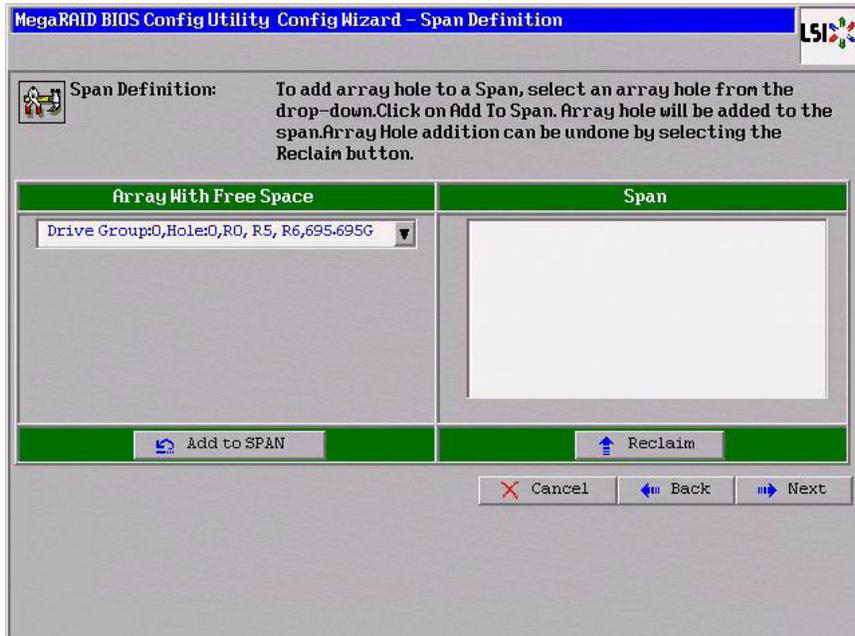


**Figure 42: WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**

7. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and click **Accept DG** for each.
8. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 43](#).

This screen displays the drive group holes you can select to add to a span.



**Figure 43: WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**

9. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

The drive group you select displays in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

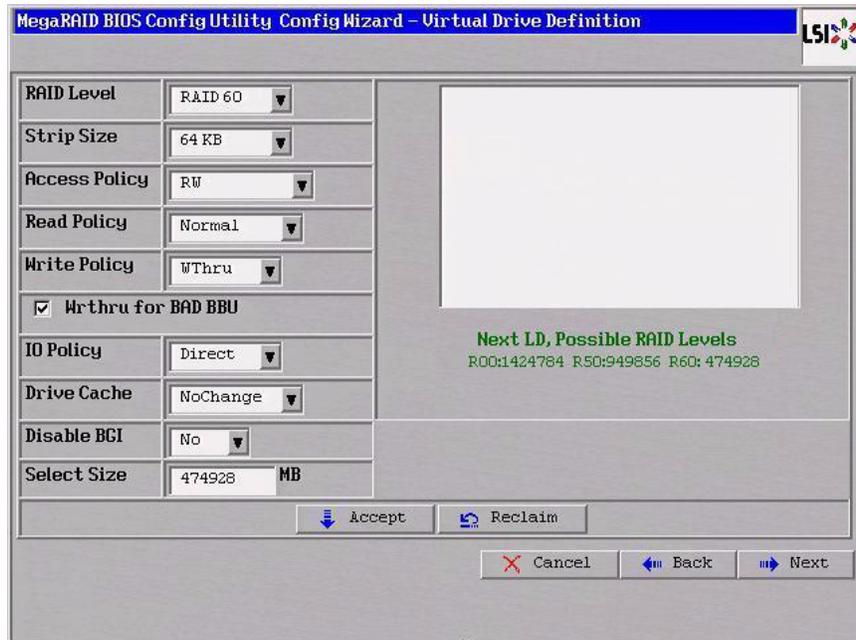
10. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

Both drive groups display in the right frame under **Span**.

11. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 44](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drive(s).

12. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two 3-drive drive groups in the Configuration window on the right.



**Figure 44: WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**

13. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 60.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - RW:* Allow read/write access.
  - Read Only:* Allow read-only access. This is the default.
  - Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

*Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

*WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.

*WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.

*Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

---

**CAUTION:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

---

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

*Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.

*Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.

- **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:

*Enable:* Enable the drive cache.

*Disable:* Disable the drive cache. This drive policy is the default.

*NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This is the default.

- **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:

*No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.

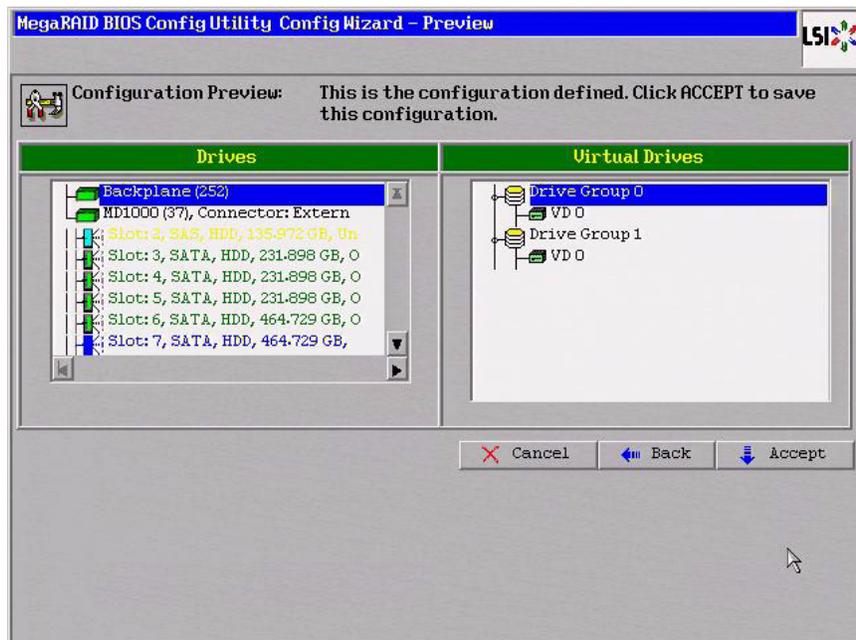
*Yes:* Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.

- **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 60 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.

**NOTE:** WebBIOS does not allow you to select 8 Kbytes as the stripe size when you create a RAID 60 drive group with six drives.

14. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
15. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 45](#).



**Figure 45: RAID 60 Configuration Preview**

16. Check the information in the configuration preview.
17. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
18. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

## 4.5 Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options

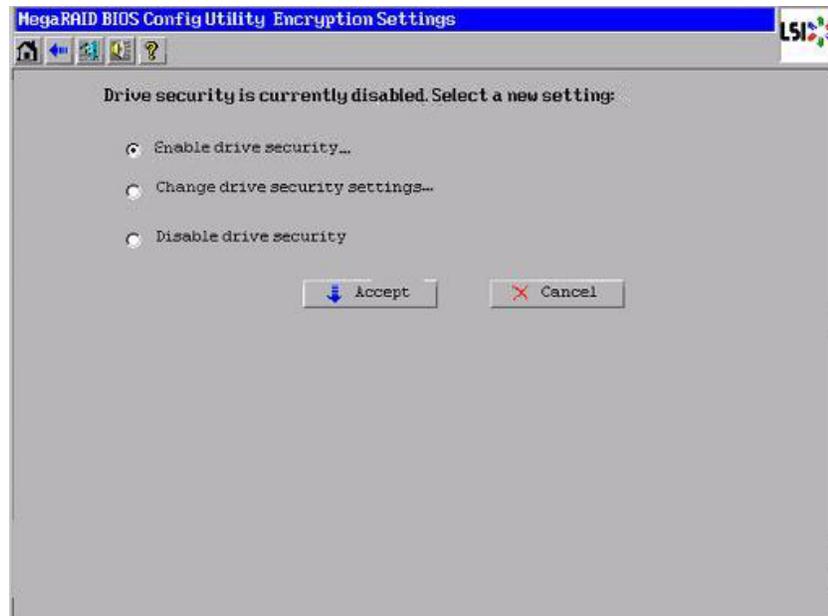
### 4.5.1 Enabling the Security Key Identifier, Security Key, and Passphrase

The Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature provides the ability to encrypt data and use disk-based key management for the data security solution. This solution protects your data in case of theft or loss of physical drives. This section describes how to enable, change, or disable the drive security settings, and how to import a foreign configuration.

Perform the following steps to enable the encryption settings for the security key identifier, security key, and passphrase.

1. Click **Encryption Settings** on the main WebBIOS screen.

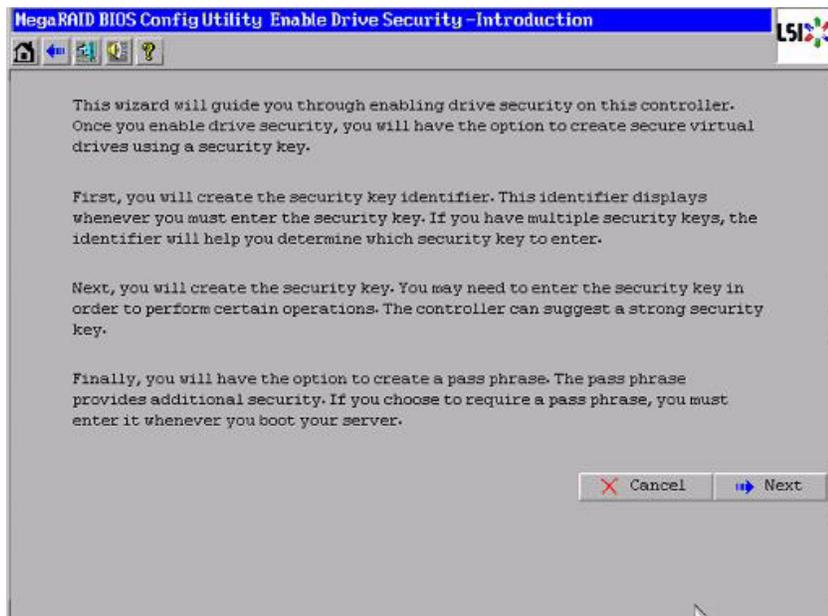
The Encryption Settings screen appears, as shown in [Figure 46](#).



**Figure 46: Encryption Settings Screen**

2. To enable the drive security settings, select **Enable drive security** and click **Accept**.

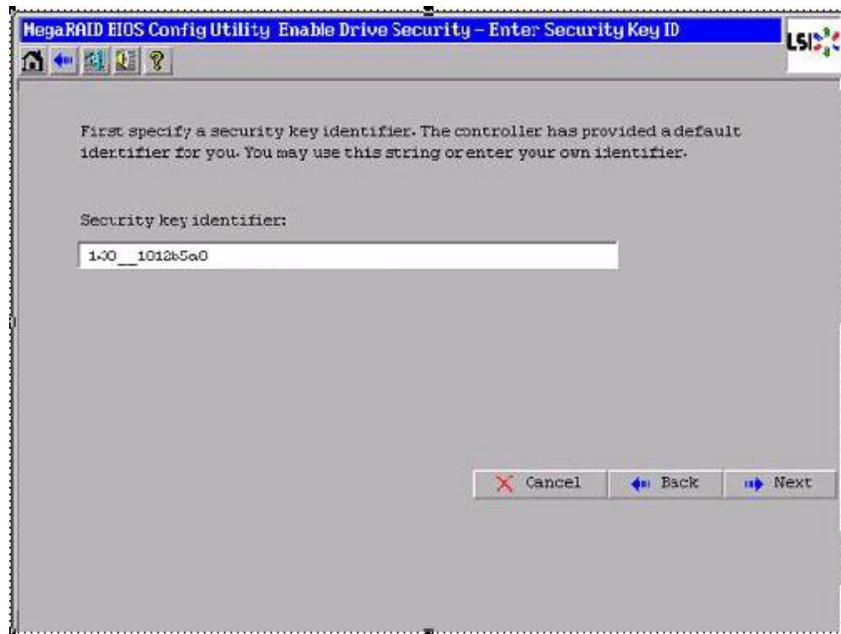
The Enable Drive Security – Introduction screen appears as shown in [Figure 47](#). This screen lists the actions you can perform: editing the security key identifier, editing the security key, and adding or changing the pass phrase (optional).



**Figure 47: Enable Drive Security - Introduction Screen**

3. Click **Next**.

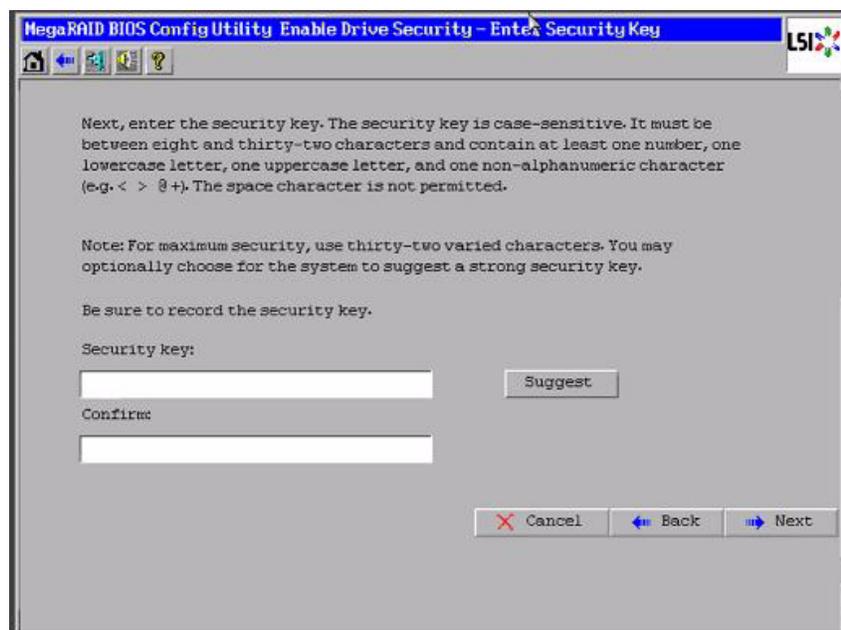
The screen used to create a security key identifier appears, as shown in [Figure 48](#).



**Figure 48: Enable Drive Security – Enter Security Key ID Screen**

4. Accept the default security key ID or enter a new security key ID.
5. Click **Next**.

The Enable Drive Security – Enter Security Key screen appears as shown in [Figure 49](#).



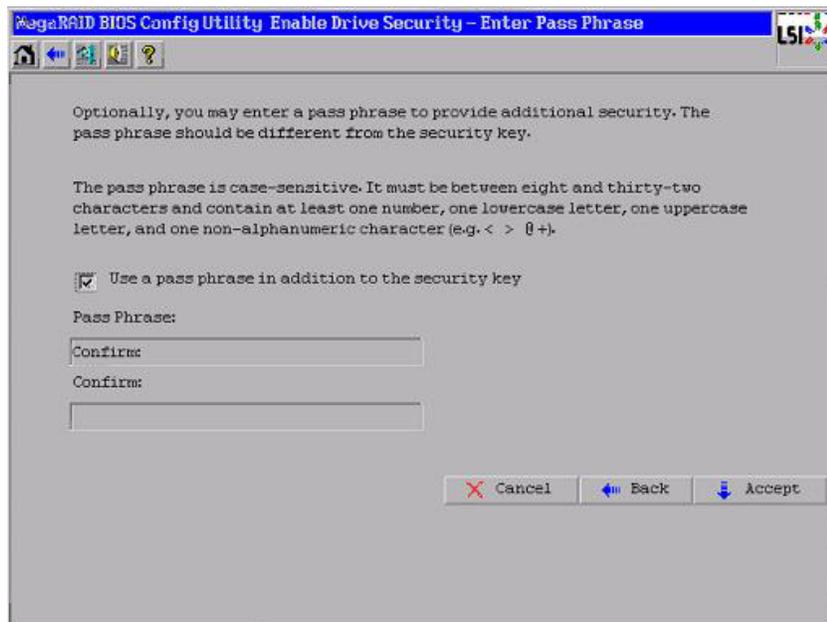
**Figure 49: Enable Drive Security – Enter Security Key**

6. Enter a new drive security key or click **Suggest** to fill the new security key. Enter the new drive security key again to confirm.

The security key is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

7. Click **Next**.

The Enable Drive Security – Enter Pass Phrase screen appears as shown in [Figure 50](#). You have the option to provide a pass phrase for additional security.



**Figure 50: Enable Drive Security – Enter Pass Phrase**

8. If you want to use a pass phrase, click the checkbox **Use a pass phrase in addition to the security key**.

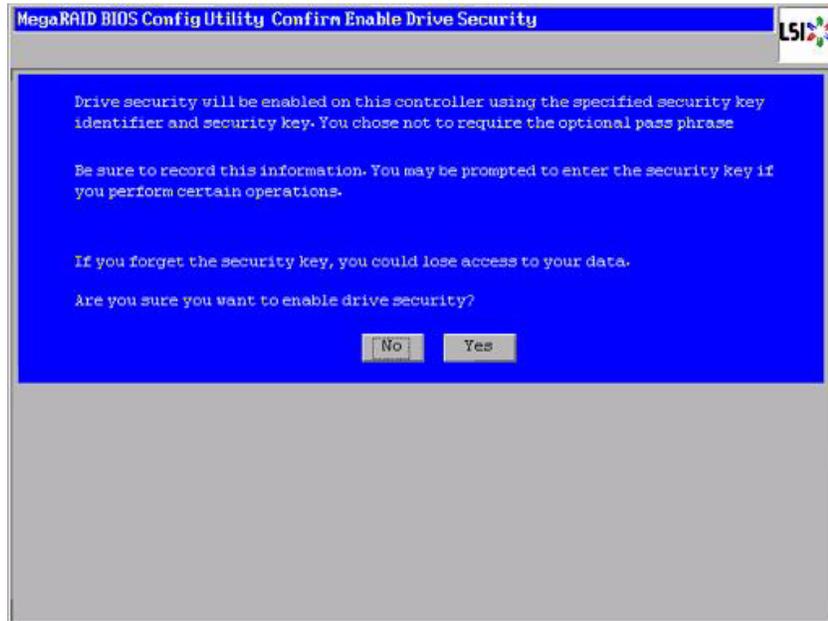
9. Enter a new pass phrase and then enter the new pass phrase again to confirm.

The pass phrase is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

Non-US keyboard users must be careful not to enter DBCS characters in the pass phrase field or security key field. Firmware works only with the ASCII character set.

10. Click **Accept**.

The Confirm Enable Drive Security screen appears, as shown in [Figure 51](#)



**Figure 51: Confirm Enable Drive Security Screen**

11. Click **Yes** on the Confirm Enable Drive Security screen to confirm that you want to enable the drive security settings.

WebBIOS enables the security key ID, security key, and pass phrase (if applicable) that you entered and returns you to the main menu.

---

**CAUTION: If you forget the security key, you will lose access to your data.** Be sure to record your security key information. You might need to enter the security key to perform certain operations.

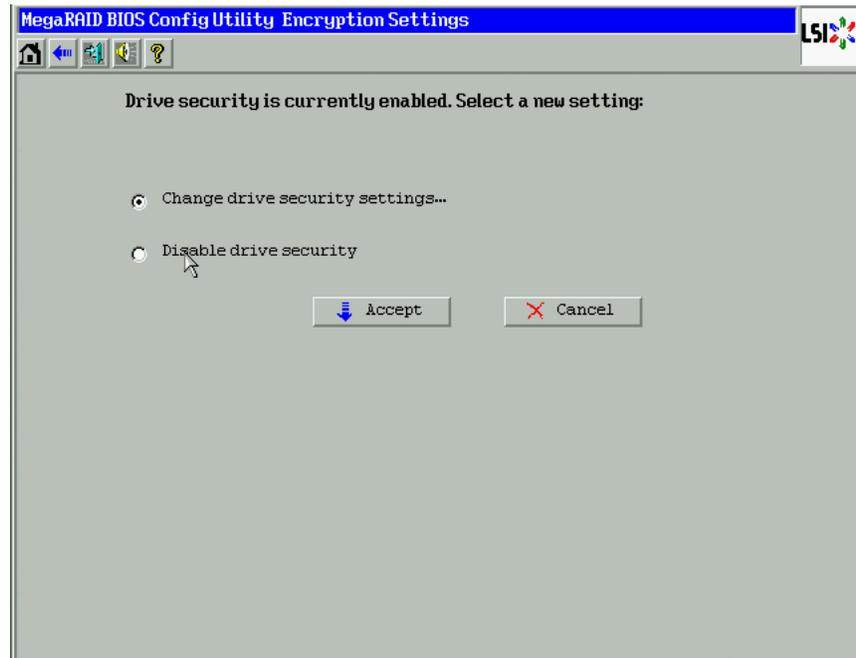
---

#### **4.5.2 Changing the Security Key Identifier, Security Key, and Pass Phrase**

If you selected disk-based encryption when you made the RAID configuration, the drive security will be enabled. Perform the following steps to change the encryption settings for the security key identifier, security key, and pass phrase.

1. Click **Encryption Settings** on the main WebBIOS screen.

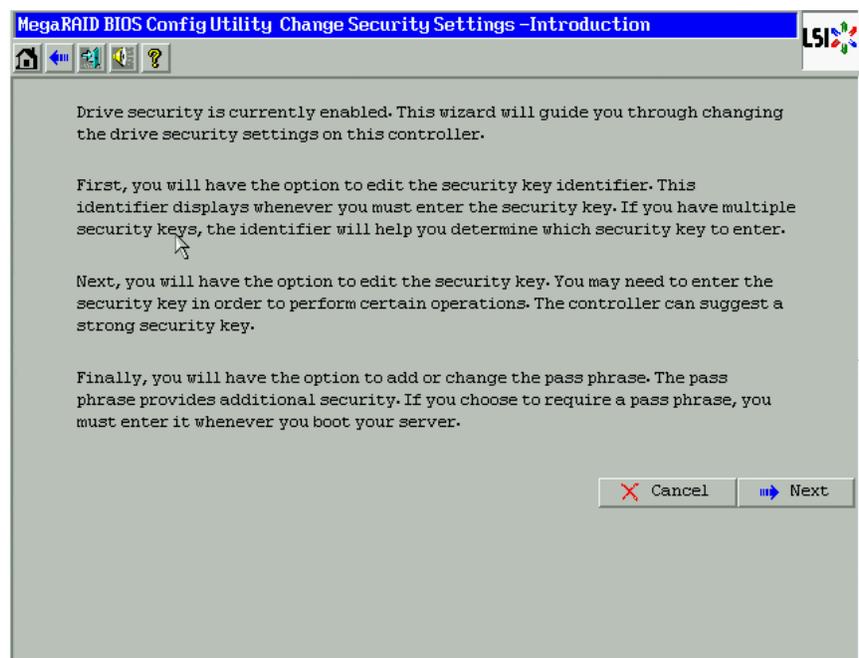
The Encryption Settings screen appears as shown in [Figure 52](#).



**Figure 52: Encryption Settings Screen**

2. To change the drive security settings, select **Change drive security settings...** and click **Accept**.

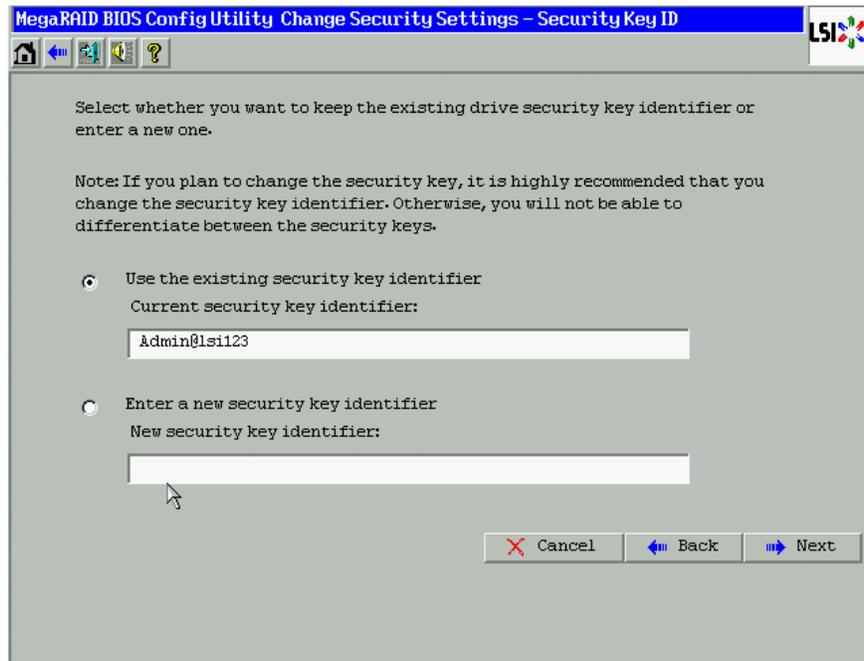
The Change Security Settings – Introduction screen appears as shown in [Figure 53](#). This screen lists the optional actions you can perform: editing the security key identifier, editing the security key, and adding or changing the pass phrase.



**Figure 53: Change Security Settings – Introduction**

3. To access the option to use the existing security key identifier or enter a new security key identifier, click **Next**.

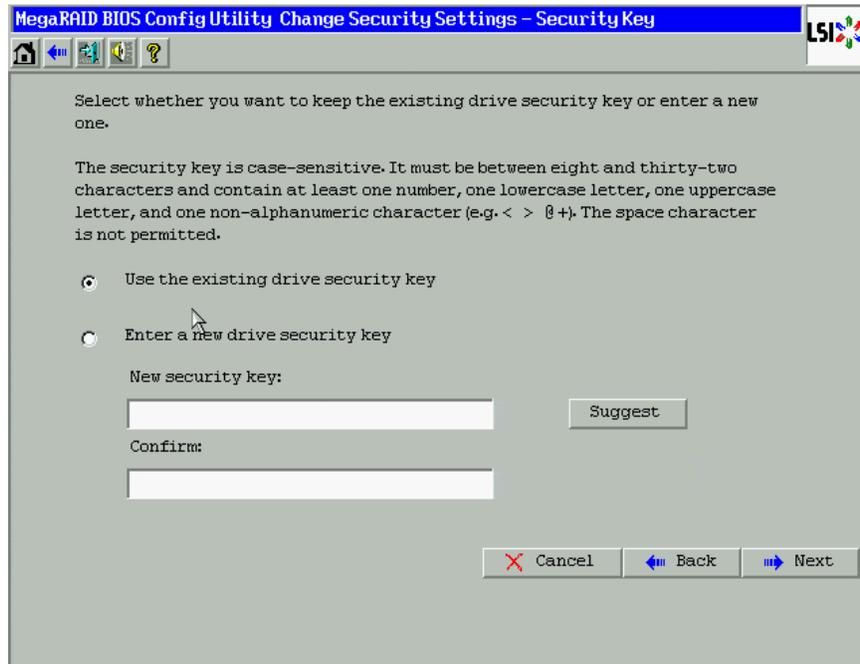
The Change Security Settings – Security Key ID screen appears as shown in [Figure 54](#).



**Figure 54: Change Security Settings – Security Key ID**

4. Choose whether you want to use the existing security key ID or enter a new security key ID. The options are:
  - Use the existing security key identifier (Current security key identifier).
  - Enter a new security key identifier (New security key identifier).
1. Click **Next**.

The Change Security Settings – Security Key screen appears as shown in [Figure 55](#). You have the option to use the existing security key or enter a new one.



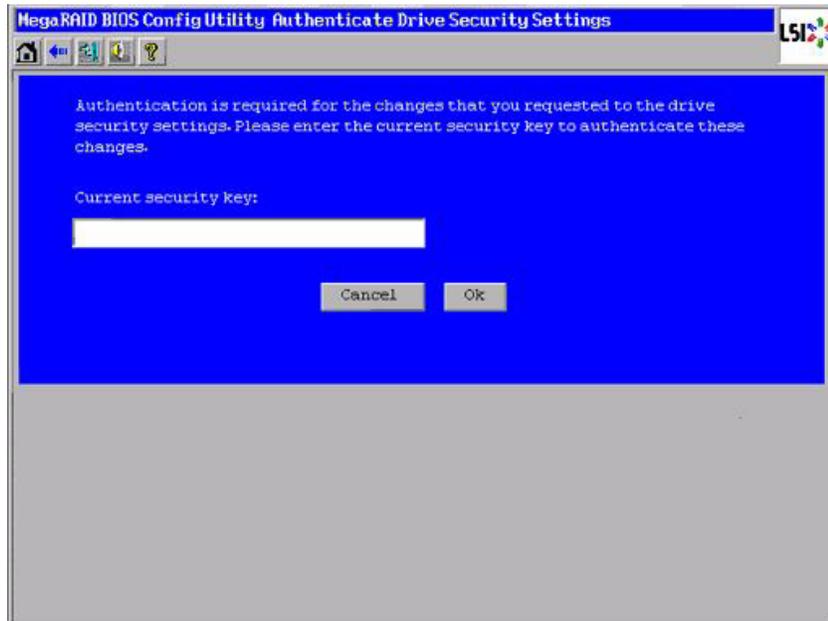
**Figure 55: Change Security Settings – Security Key**

2. Choose whether you want to use the existing security key or enter a new security key. The options are:
  - Use the existing drive security key.
  - Enter a new drive security key.
3. If you choose to enter a new drive security key, you can create a new drive security key or click **Suggest** to fill the new security key. Enter the new drive security key again to confirm.

The security key is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

4. Click **Next**.

If you entered a new drive security key, the Authenticate Drive Security Key screen appears as shown in [Figure 56](#).



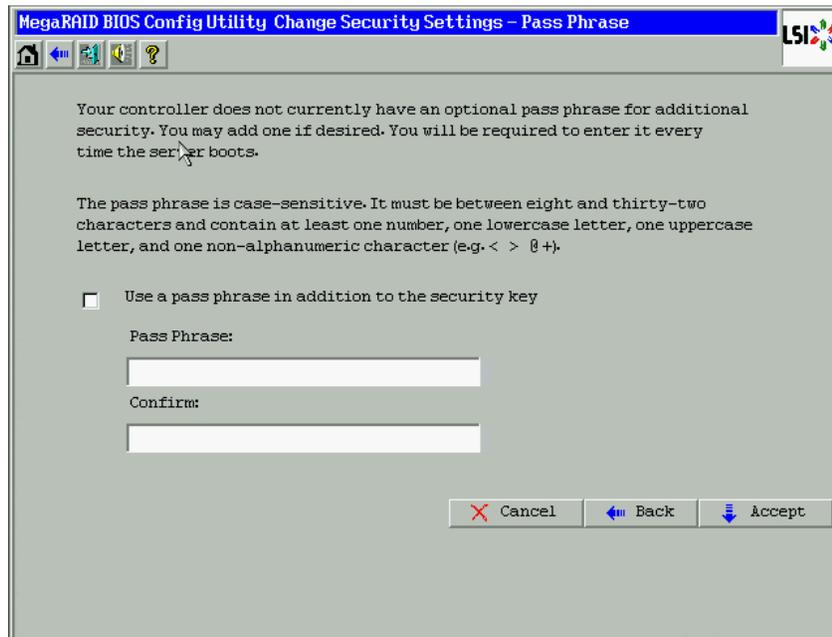
**Figure 56: Authenticate Drive Security Key**

5. Enter the current security key and click **OK**.

The text box for the security key can hold up to 32 characters. The key must be at least eight characters. After you enter the correct security key, the wizard returns to the Change Security Settings – Security Key screen.

6. Click **Next**.

The Change Security Settings – Pass Phrase screen appears as shown in [Figure 57](#). You have the option to provide a pass phrase for additional security.



**Figure 57: Change Security Settings – Pass Phrase**

7. If you want to use a pass phrase, click the checkbox **Use a pass phrase in addition to the security key**.

8. Enter a new pass phrase and then enter the new pass phrase again to confirm.

The pass phrase is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

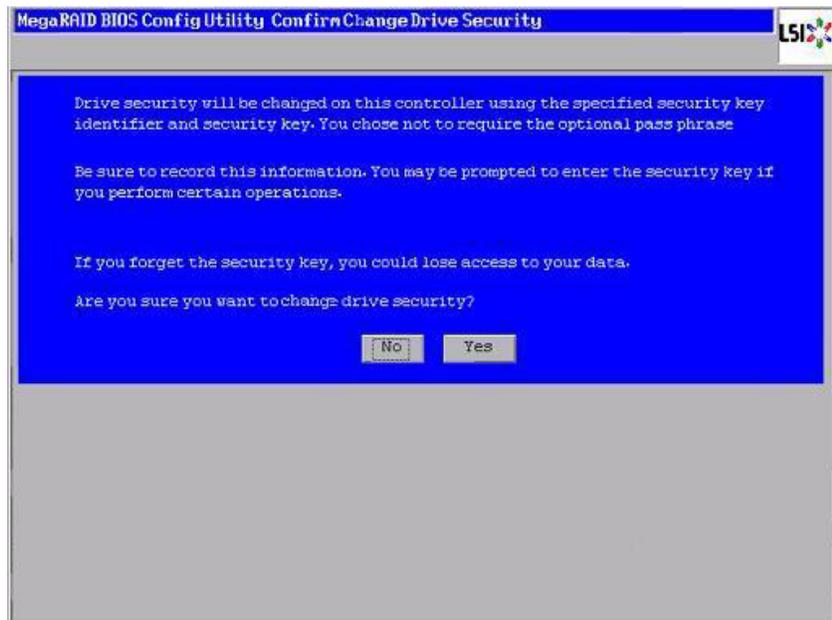
Non-US keyboard users must be careful not to enter DBCS characters in the pass phrase field or security key field. Firmware works only with the ASCII character set.

9. Click **Accept**.

If you entered a new a pass phrase, the Authenticate Pass Phrase screen appears.

10. On the Authenticate Pass Phrase screen, enter the pass phrase and click **Finish**.

The Confirm Change Drive Security Settings screen appears as shown in [Figure 58](#). This screen lists the changes you made and asks you whether you want to confirm these changes.



**Figure 58: Confirm Change Drive Security Settings**

11. Click **Yes** on the Confirm Change Drive Security Settings screen, confirm that you want to change the drive security settings.

If the current security key is not needed, WebBIOS saves the changes to the security settings and returns you to the main menu. If the current security key is needed, the Authenticate Drive Security Settings screen displays.

### 4.5.3 Disabling the Drive Security Settings

Perform the following steps to disable the drive security settings.

**NOTE:** If you disable the drive security settings, you cannot create any new secure virtual drives. Disabling these settings does not affect the security or data of foreign drives. If you removed any drives that were previously secured, you will still need to enter the security key when you import them.

1. Click **Encryption Settings** on the main WebBIOS screen.

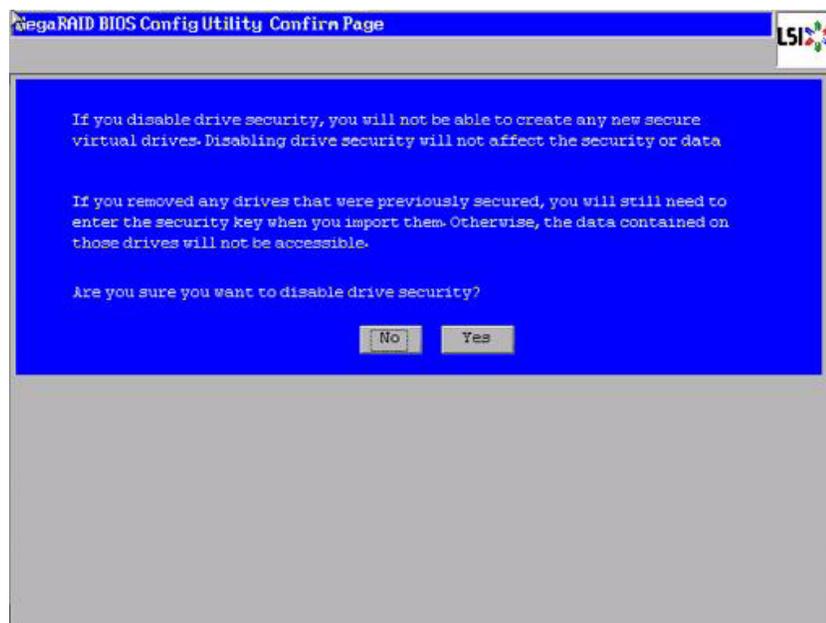
The Encryption Settings screen appears as shown in [Figure 59](#).



**Figure 59: Encryption Settings**

2. To disable the drive security settings, select **Disable drive security** and click **Accept**.

The Confirm Disable Drive Security screen appears as shown in [Figure 60](#).



**Figure 60: Confirm Disable Drive Security Settings**

3. On the Confirm Disable Security Settings screen, click **No** to confirm that you want to disable the drive security settings.

WebBIOS returns you to the MSM main menu.

#### 4.5.4 Importing Foreign Configurations

After you create a security key, you can run a scan for a foreign configuration and import a locked configuration. (You can import unsecured or unlocked configurations when security is disabled.) A foreign configuration is a RAID configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system. You can use the WebBIOS utility to import the existing configuration to the RAID controller or clear the configuration so you can create a new one.

See [Section 4.8.3, \*Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration\*](#) for the procedures used to import or clear a foreign configuration.

To import a foreign configuration, you must first enable security to allow importation of locked foreign drives. If the drives are locked and the controller security is disabled, you cannot import the foreign drives. Only unlocked drives can be imported when security is disabled.

After you enable the security, you can import the locked drives. To import the locked drives, you must provide the security key used to secure them. Verify whether any drives are left to import as the locked drives can use different security keys. If there are any drives left, repeat the import process for the remaining drives. After all of the drives are imported, there is no configuration to import.

## 4.6 Viewing and Changing Device Properties

### 4.6.1 Viewing and Changing Controller Properties

This section explains how you can use the WebBIOS CU to view and change the properties for controllers, virtual drives, drives, and BBUs.

WebBIOS displays information for one LSI SAS controller at a time. If your computer system has multiple LSI SAS controllers, you can view information for a different controller by clicking **Controller Selection** on the main screen. When the Controller Selection screen appears, select the controller you want from the list.

To view the properties for the currently selected controller, click **Controller Properties** on the main WebBIOS screen. There are three Controller Properties screens. [Figure 61](#) shows the first screen.

MegaRAID SAS 8888ELP			
Serial Number	123456	FRU	None
SubVendorID	0x1000	Encryption Capable	No
SubDeviceID	0x1006	NVRAMSize	32 KB
PortCount	8	Memory Size	256 MB
HostInterface	PCIe	Min Stripe Size	8 KB
Firmware Version	1.40.02-0514	Max Stripe Size	1024 KB
FW Package Version	9.1.1-0012	Virtual Drive Count	0
Firmware Time	Aug 29 2008:18:40:33	Drive Count	14
WebBIOS Version	2.2-13-Rel		

**Figure 61: First Controller Properties Screen**

The information on this screen is read-only and cannot be modified directly. Most of this information is self-explanatory. The screen lists the number of virtual drives that are already defined on this controller, and the number of drives connected to the controller.

If a background initialization is in progress, you can click **Background Init Progress** to determine its state of completion. Click **Next** to view the second Controller Properties screen, as shown in [Figure 62](#).

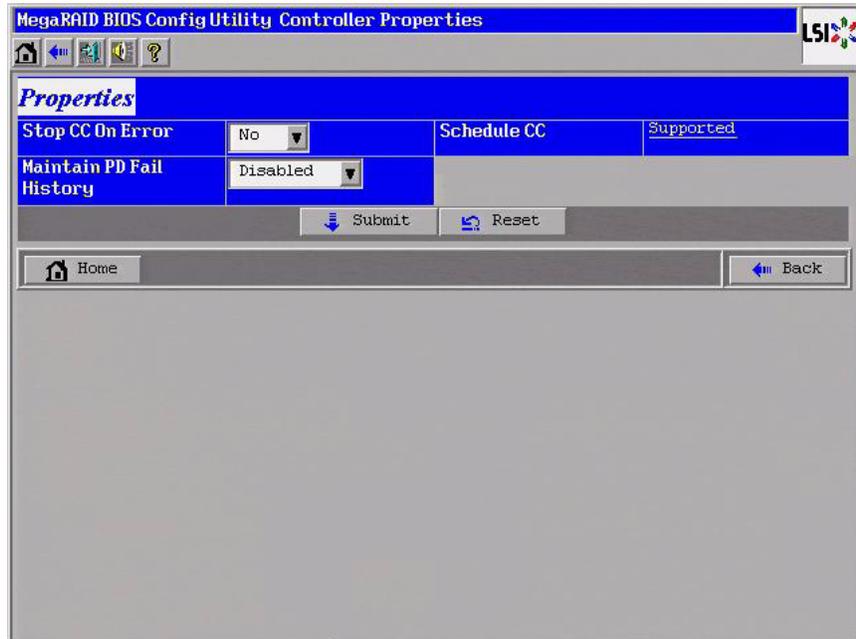
Properties			
Battery Backup	None	Coercion Mode	1GB-way
Set Factory Defaults	No	S.M.A.R.T Polling	300 seconds
Cluster Mode	Disabled	Alarm Control	Enabled
Rebuild Rate	30	Patrol Read Rate	30
BCI Rate	30	Cache Flush Interval	4
CC Rate	30	Spinup Drive Count	2
Reconstruction Rate	30	Spinup Delay	12
Controller BIOS	Enabled	StopOnError	Enabled
NCQ	Enabled	Drive Power save	Disabled
Connector 1	External	Connector 2	External

Submit    Reset    Next

Home    Back

**Figure 62: Second Controller Properties Screen**

Click **Next** to view the third Controller Properties screen, as shown in [Figure 63](#).



**Figure 63: Third Controller Properties Screen**

Table 20 describes the entries/options listed on the second and third Controller Properties screen. LSI recommends that you leave these options at their default settings to achieve the best performance, unless you have a specific reason for changing them.

**Table 20: Controller Properties Menu Options**

Option	Description
Battery Backup	This entry indicates whether the selected controller has a BBU. If present, you can click <i>Present</i> to view information about the BBU. For more information, see <a href="#">Section 4.6.4, Viewing and Changing Battery Backup Unit Information</a>
Set Factory Defaults	Use this option to load the default MegaRAID® WebBIOS CU settings. The default is <i>No</i> .
Cluster Mode	Use this option to enable or disable Cluster mode. The default is <i>Disabled</i> . A cluster is a grouping of independent servers that can access the same data storage and provide services to a common set of clients. When Cluster mode is disabled, the system operates in Standard mode.
Rebuild Rate	Use this option to select the rebuild rate for drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent. The rebuild rate is the percentage of system resources dedicated to rebuilding a failed drive. The higher the number, the more system resources devoted to a rebuild.
BGI Rate	Use this option to select the amount of system resources dedicated to background initialization of virtual drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent.
CC Rate	Use this option to select the amount of system resources dedicated to consistency checks of virtual drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent.

**Table 20: Controller Properties Menu Options (Continued)**

Option	Description
Reconstruction Rate	Use this option to select the amount of system resources dedicated to reconstruction of drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent.
Controller BIOS	Use this option to enable or disable the BIOS for the selected controller. The default is <i>Enabled</i> . If the boot device is on the selected controller, the BIOS must be enabled; otherwise, the BIOS should be disabled or it might not be possible to use a boot device elsewhere.
NCQ	Native Command Queuing (NCQ) gives an individual drive the ability to optimize the order in which it executes the read and write commands. The default is <i>Enabled</i> .
Connector 1	Identifies where the chain of enclosures is connected to the RAID controller.
Coercion Mode	Drive coercion is a tool for forcing drives of varying capacities to the same size so they can be used in a drive group. The coercion mode options are <i>None</i> , <i>128MB-way</i> , and <i>1GB-way</i> . The default is <i>None</i> .  The number you choose depends on how much the drives from various vendors vary in their actual size. LSI recommends that you use the 1GB coercion mode option.
S.M.A.R.T. Polling	Use this option to determine how frequently the controller polls for drives reporting a Predictive Drive Failure (S.M.A.R.T.: Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology error). The default is 300 seconds (5 minutes).
Alarm Control	Select this option to enable, disable, or silence the onboard alarm tone generator on the controller. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
Patrol Read Rate	Use this option to select the rate for patrol reads for drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent. The patrol read rate is the percentage of system resources dedicated to running a patrol read. See <a href="#">Section 5.5, Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties</a> for additional information about patrol read.
Cache Flush Interval	Use this option to control the interval (in seconds) at which the contents of the onboard data cache are flushed. The default is 4 seconds.
Spinup Drive Count	Use this option to control the number of drives that spin up simultaneously. The default is 2 drives.
Spinup Delay	Use this option to control the interval (in seconds) between spinup of drives connected to this controller. The delay prevents a drain on the system's power supply that would occur if all drives spun up at the same time. The default is 12 seconds.
StopOnError	Enable this option if you want the boot process to stop when the controller BIOS encounters an error during boot-up. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .

**Table 20: Controller Properties Menu Options (Continued)**

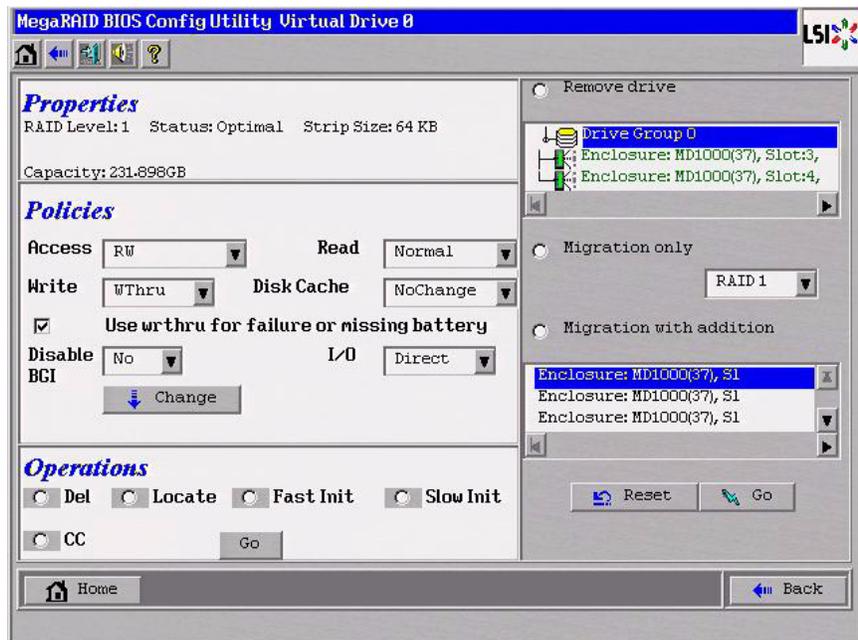
Option	Description
Drive Powersave	<p>Drive Powersave conserves energy by placing certain unused drives into powersave mode. Use this field to choose whether to allow unconfigured drives to enter powersave mode.</p> <p>When this option is selected, unconfigured drives may be spun down. When not selected, these drives are not spun down. The controller will automatically spin up drives from powersave mode whenever necessary. The powersave option is not selected by default. You have to select it to enable the spin-down of drives.</p>
Connector 2	Identifies where the chain of enclosures is connected to the RAID controller.
Stop CC on Error	Enable this option if you want to stop a consistency check when the controller BIOS encounters an error. The default is <i>No</i> .
Maintain PD Fail History	Enable this option to maintain the history of all drive failures. The default is <i>Enabled</i> .
Schedule CC	Indicates whether the option to schedule the date and time for a consistency check is supported.

If you make changes to the options on this screen, click **Submit** to register them. If you change your mind, click **Reset** to return the options to their default values.

**4.6.2 Viewing and Changing Virtual Drive Properties**

Access the Virtual Drive screen by clicking on a virtual drive in the list of virtual drives in the right panel on the WebBIOS CU main screen.

The Virtual Drive screen displays, as shown in [Figure 64](#).



**Figure 64: Virtual Drive Screen**

The Properties panel of this screen displays the virtual drive's RAID level, state, size, and stripe size.

The Policies panel lists the virtual drive policies that were defined when the storage configuration was created. For information about these policies, see [Section 4.4.3, Using Manual Configuration](#). To change any of these policies, make a selection from the drop-down menu and click **Change**.

The Operations panel lists operations that can be performed on the virtual drive. To perform an operation, select it and click **Go**. Then choose from the following options:

- Select **Del** to delete this virtual drive. For more information, see [Section 4.8.2, Deleting a Virtual Drive](#)
- Select **Locate** to make the LEDs flash on the drives used by this virtual drive. This works only if the drives are installed in a drive enclosure that supports SAFTE.
- Select **Fast Init** or **Slow Init** to initialize this virtual drive. A fast initialization quickly writes zeroes to the first and last 10 Mbyte regions of the new virtual drive and then completes the initialization in the background. A slow initialization is not complete until the entire virtual drive has been initialized with zeroes. It is seldom necessary to use this option, because the virtual drive was already initialized when you created it.

---

**CAUTION:** Before you run an initialization, back up any data on the virtual drive that you want to save. All data on the virtual drive is lost when you initialize it.

---

- Select **CC** to run a consistency check on this virtual drive. For more information, see [Section 4.8.1, Running a Consistency Check](#) (This option is not available for RAID 0 virtual drives.)

In the right panel of the Virtual Drive screen you can change the virtual drive configuration by adding or removing a drive or by changing the RAID level.

---

**CAUTION:** Before you change a virtual drive configuration, back up any data on the virtual drive that you want to save.

---

To remove a drive from a virtual drive, select the drive in the small panel beneath the *Remove drive* option. Then select **Remove drive** and click **Go** at the bottom of the panel.

See [Section 4.8.4, Migrating the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive](#) for information about adding a drive to a virtual drive or migrating its RAID level.

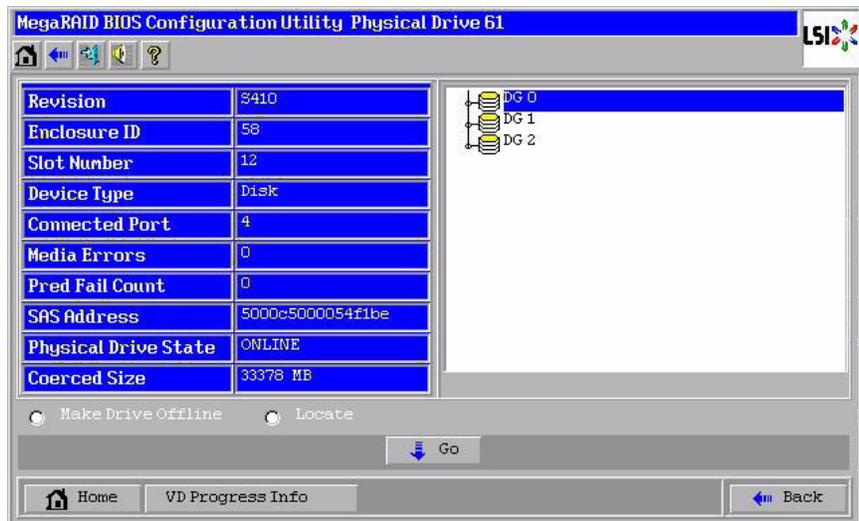
### 4.6.3 Viewing Drive Properties

---

The Physical Drive screen displays the properties of a selected drive and enables you to perform operations on the drive. There are two ways to access the Physical Drive screen:

- On the main menu screen, click on a drive in the right panel under the heading **Physical Drives**.
- On the main menu screen, click on **Physical Drives** in the left panel to display the Physical Drive screen. Then click on a drive in the right panel. Click on the **Properties** button, and click **Go**. The properties for the selected drive displays.

Figure 65 shows the Physical Drive screen.



**Figure 65: Physical Drive Screen**

The drive properties are view-only and are self-explanatory. Note that the properties include the state of the drive.

Operations you can perform are listed at the bottom of the screen. After you select an operation, click **Go** to start the operation. The operations vary depending on the drive state. If the drive state is **Online**, the following operations appear:

- Select **MakeDriveOffline** if you want to force the drive offline.

---

**NOTE:** If you force offline a good drive that is part of a redundant drive group with a hot spare, the drive will rebuild to the hot spare drive. The drive you forced offline will go into the *Unconfigured Bad* state. Access the BIOS utility to set the drive to the *Unconfigured Good* state.

---

- Select **Locate** to make the LED flash on the drive. This works only if the drive is installed in a drive enclosure.

If the drive state is Unconfigured Good, four additional operations appear on this screen:

- Select **Make Global HSP** to make a global hot spare, available to all of the virtual drives.
- Select **Make Dedicated HSP** to make a hot spare dedicated to a specific virtual drive.

WebBIOS displays the global hot spare as *Global* and the dedicated hot spare as *Ded*. The icon for the dedicated hot spare displays under its associated virtual drive. The drive number, drive state, drive capacity, and drive manufacturer display.

- Select **Enclosure Affinity** so if there are drive failures present on a split backplane configuration, then the hot spare will be used first on the backplane side that it resides in.

- Select **Prepare for Removal** to prepare the drive for removal from the enclosure.

The **Prepare for Removal** feature is different from spinning a drive down into powersave mode because it also involves flagging the drive as ready to remove. Therefore, if you choose to prepare a drive for removal, **Ready to Remove** displays in the device tree for that drive, instead of **Powersave**.

#### 4.6.4 Viewing and Changing Battery Backup Unit Information

If your SAS controller has a battery backup unit (BBU), you can view information about it and change some settings. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click **Controller Properties** on the WebBIOS CU main menu screen.

The first **Controller Properties** screen appears, as shown in [Figure 66](#).



**Figure 66: First Controller Properties Screen**

2. Click **Next** to view the second Controller Properties screen.

The second Controller Properties screen appears, as shown in [Figure 67](#). The **Battery Backup** field at the top left of the screen indicates whether the iBBU is present.



Figure 67: Second Controller Properties Screen

3. Click **Present** in the **Battery Backup** field.

The Battery Module screen appears, as shown in Figure 68. This screen contains the following information:

- Battery information
- Design information
- Capacity information
- Auto Learn properties and settings

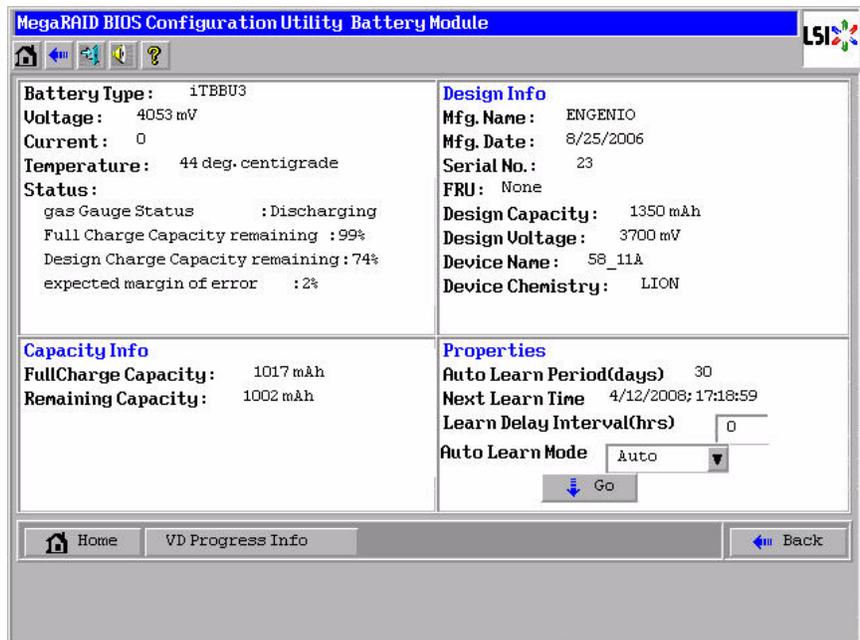


Figure 68: Battery Module Screen

Most of the Battery Module properties are view-only and are self-explanatory.

In the lower right corner of the screen are the auto learn options. A *learning cycle* is a battery calibration operation performed by the controller periodically to determine the condition of the battery. You can change the learn delay interval (the length of time between automatic learning cycles) and the auto learn mode.

---

**NOTE:** LSI recommends leaving the the learn delay interval and the auto learn mode at their default settings.

---

### Setting the Learn Delay Interval

The learn delay interval is the length of time between automatic learning cycles. Perform the following steps to change the interval:

- a. Open the drop-down menu in the **Auto Learn Mode** field.
- b. Select the learn mode as `Auto` (the default).  
This is so the controller performs the learning cycle automatically.
- c. Change the number of hours in the **Learn Delay Interval** field.  
You can delay the start of the learn cycles for up to 168 hours (7 days).
- d. Click **Go** to set the interval.

### Setting the Auto Learn Mode

You can start battery learning cycles manually or automatically. The Auto Learn modes are:

- BBU Auto Learn: Firmware tracks the time since the last learning cycle and performs a learn cycle when due.
- BBU Auto Learn Disabled: Firmware does not monitor or initiate a learning cycle. You can schedule learning cycles manually.
- BBU Auto Learn Warn: Firmware warns about a pending learning cycle. You can initiate a learning cycle manually. After the learning cycle is complete, firmware resets the counter and warns you when the next learning cycle time is reached.

Perform the following steps to choose an auto learn mode:

- a. Open the drop-down menu in the **Auto Learn Mode** field.
- b. Select an auto learn mode.
- c. Click **Go** to set the auto learn mode.

---

**NOTE:** When you replace the iBBU, the charge cycle counter is reset automatically.

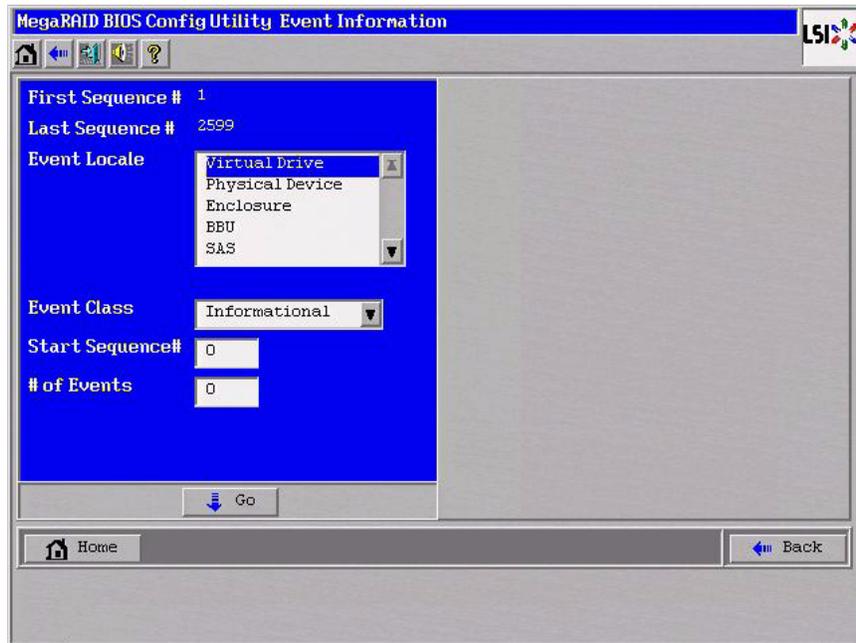
---

## 4.7 Viewing System Event Information

---

The SAS controller firmware monitors the activity and performance of all storage configurations and devices in the system. When an event occurs (such as the creation of a new virtual drive or the removal of a drive) an event message is generated and is stored in the controller NVRAM.

You can use the WebBIOS CU to view these event messages. To do this, click **Events** on the main WebBIOS CU screen. The Event Information screen appears, as shown in [Figure 69](#).



**Figure 69: Event Information Screen**

The right side of the screen is blank until you select an event to view. The First Sequence and Last Sequence fields in the upper left of the screen show you how many event entries are currently stored.

To view event information, follow these steps:

1. Select an Event Locale from the menu. For example, select **Enclosure** to view events relating to the drive enclosure.
2. Select an Event Class: *Information*, *Warning*, *Critical*, *Fatal*, or *Dead*.
3. Enter a Start Sequence number, between the First Sequence and Last Sequence numbers. The higher the number, the more recent the event.
4. Enter the Number of events of this type that you want to view, and click **Go**.

The first event in the sequence appears in the right panel.

5. Click **Next** or **Prev** to page forward or backward through the sequence of events.
6. If you want, select different event criteria in the left panel, and click **Go** again to view a different sequence of events.

Each event entry includes a timestamp and a description to help you determine when the event occurred and what it was.

## 4.8 Managing Configurations

This section includes information about maintaining and managing storage configurations.

### 4.8.1 Running a Consistency Check

You should periodically run a consistency check on fault-tolerant virtual drives. A consistency check verifies that the redundancy data is correct and available for RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 drive groups. To do this, follow these steps:

1. On the main WebBIOS CU screen, select a virtual drive.
2. Click **Virtual Drives**.
3. When the Virtual Drive screen appears, select **CC** in the lower left panel, and click **Go**.

The consistency check begins.

If the WebBIOS CU finds a difference between the data and the parity value on the redundant drive group, it assumes that the data is accurate and automatically corrects the parity value. Be sure to back up the data before running a consistency check if you think the data might be corrupted.

### 4.8.2 Deleting a Virtual Drive

You can delete any virtual drive on the controller if you want to reuse that space for a new virtual drive. The WebBIOS CU provides a list of configurable drive groups where there is a space to configure. If multiple virtual drives are defined on a single drive group, you can delete a virtual drive without deleting the whole drive group.

To delete a virtual drive, follow these steps:

---

**CAUTION:** Back up any data that you want to keep before you delete the virtual drive.

---

1. On the main WebBIOS CU screen, select a virtual drive.
2. Click **Virtual Drives**.
3. When the Virtual Drive screen appears, select **Del** in the lower left panel, and click **Go**.
4. When the message appears, confirm that you want to delete the virtual drive.

### 4.8.3 Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration

A *foreign configuration* is a storage configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system.

In addition, if one or more drives are removed from a configuration, by a cable pull or drive removal, for example, the configuration on those drives is considered a foreign configuration by the RAID controller.

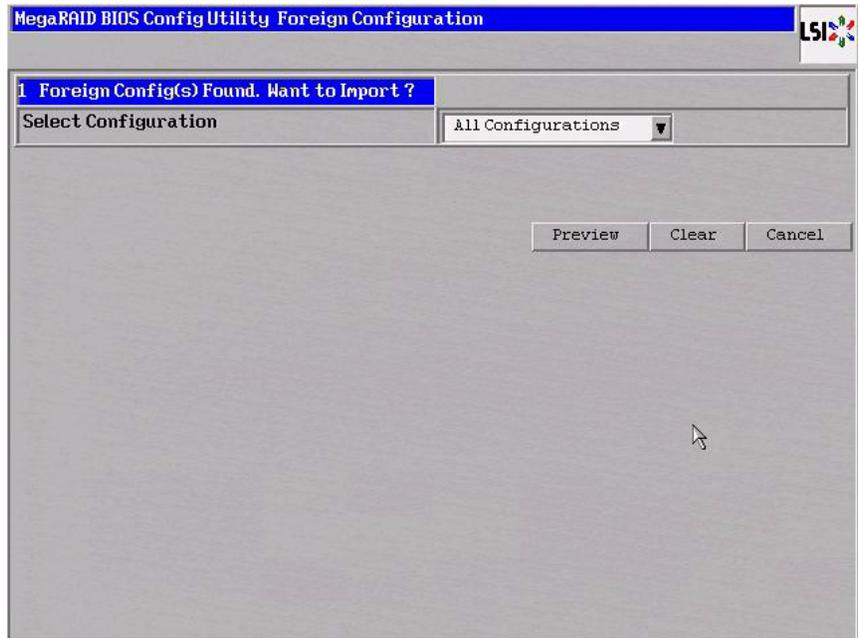
The BIOS CU allows you to import the foreign configuration to the RAID controller, or to clear the configuration so you can create a new configuration using these drives.

---

**NOTE:** When you create a new configuration, the WebBIOS CU shows only the unconfigured drives. Drives that have existing configurations, including foreign configurations, will **not** appear. To use drives with existing configurations, you must first clear the configuration on those drives.

---

If WebBIOS CU detects a foreign configuration, the import screen appears, as shown in [Figure 70](#).



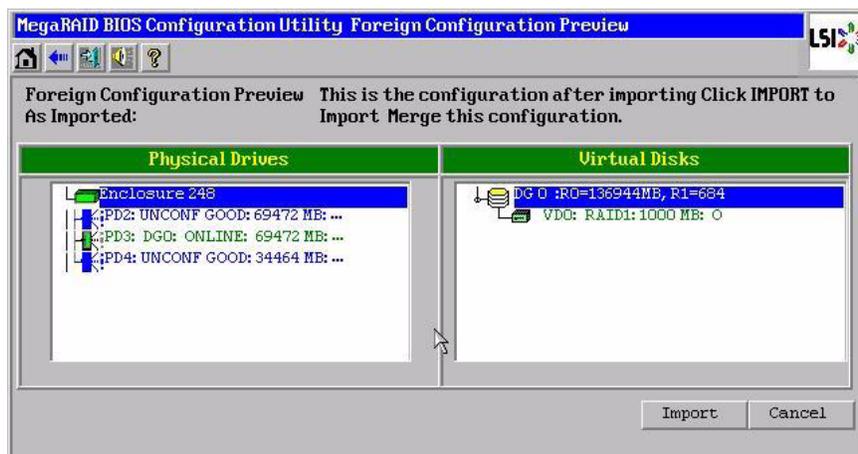
**Figure 70: Foreign Configuration Import Screen**

The GUID (Global Unique Identifier) entries on the drop-down list are OEM names and will vary from one installation to another.

Click **Preview** if you want to preview the foreign configuration. The preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 71](#).

Click **Clear** if you want to clear the configuration and reuse the drives for another virtual drive.

Click **Cancel** to cancel the importation or preview of the configuration.



**Figure 71: Foreign Configuration Preview Screen**

### 4.8.3.1 Foreign Configurations in Cable Pull and Drive Removal Scenarios

The right panel shows the virtual drive properties of the foreign configuration. In this example, there is a RAID 1 virtual drive with 1,000 Mbytes. The left panel shows the drives that comprise the foreign configuration.

Click **Import** to import this foreign configuration and use it on this controller.

Click **Cancel** to clear the configuration and reuse the drives for another virtual drive.

If one or more drives are removed from a configuration, by a cable pull or drive removal, for example, the configuration on those drives is considered a foreign configuration by the RAID controller.

Use the **Foreign Configuration Preview** screen to import or clear the foreign configuration in each case. The import procedure and clear procedure are described in [Section 4.8.3, Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration](#)

The following scenarios can occur with cable pulls or drive removals.

---

**NOTE:** If you want to import the foreign configuration in any of the following scenarios, you should have all of the drives in the enclosure before you perform the import operation.

---

- Scenario #1: If all of the drives in a configuration are removed and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

---

**NOTE:** Start a consistency check immediately after the rebuild is complete to ensure data integrity for the virtual drives.

See [Section 4.8.1, Running a Consistency Check](#) for more information about checking data consistency.

---

- Scenario #2: If some of the drives in a configuration are removed and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

---

**NOTE:** Start a consistency check immediately after the rebuild is complete to ensure data integrity for the virtual drives.

See [Section 4.8.1, Running a Consistency Check](#) for more information about checking data consistency.

---

- Scenario #3: If all of the drives in a virtual drive are removed, but at different times, and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, all drives that were pulled *before* the virtual drive became offline will be imported and then automatically rebuilt. Automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

- If the drives in a non-redundant virtual drive are removed, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. No rebuilds will occur after the import operation because there is no redundant data to rebuild the drives with.

#### 4.8.3.2 Importing Foreign Configurations from Integrated RAID to MegaRAID

The LSI Integrated RAID solution simplifies the configuration options and provides firmware support in its host controllers. LSI offers two types of Integrated RAID (IR): Integrated Mirroring (IM) and Integrated Striping (IS).

You can import an IM or IS RAID configuration from an IR system into a MegaRAID system. The MegaRAID system treats the IR configuration as a foreign configuration. You can import or clear the IR configuration.

---

**NOTE:** For more information about Integrated RAID, refer to the *Integrated RAID for SAS User's Guide*. You can find this document on the LSI web site at: <http://www.lsi.com/cm/DownloadSearch.do>.

---

#### 4.8.3.3 Troubleshooting Information

An IR virtual drive can have either 64 Mbytes or 512 Mbytes available for metadata at the end of the drive. This data is in LSI Data Format (LDF). MegaRAID virtual drives have 512 Mbytes for metadata at the end of the drive in the Disk Data format (DDF).

To import an IR virtual drive into MegaRAID, the IR virtual drive must have 512 Mbytes in the metadata, which is the same amount of metadata as in a MegaRAID virtual drive. If the IR virtual drive has only 64 Mbytes when you attempt to import it into MegaRAID, the import will fail because the last 448 Mbytes of your data will be overwritten and the data lost.

If your IR virtual drive has only 64 Mbytes for metadata at the end of the drive, you cannot import the virtual drive into MegaRAID. You need to use another upgrade method, such as backup/restore to the upgraded virtual drive type.

In order to import an IR virtual drive into a MegaRAID system, use the **Foreign Configuration Preview** screen to import or clear the foreign configuration. The import procedure and the clear procedure are described in [Section 4.8.3, Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration](#)

#### 4.8.4 Migrating the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive

---

As the amount of data and the number of drives in your system increase, you can use RAID-level migration to change a virtual drive from one RAID level to another. You do not have to power down or reboot the system. When you migrate a virtual drive, you can keep the same number of drives, or you can add drives. You can use the WebBIOS CU to migrate the RAID level of an existing virtual drive.

---

**NOTE:** While you can apply RAID-level migration at any time, LSI recommends that you do so when there are no reboots. Many operating systems issues I/O operations serially (one at a time) during boot. With a RAID-level migration running, a boot can often take more than 15 minutes.

---

Migrations are allowed for the following RAID levels:

- RAID 0 to RAID 1
- RAID 0 to RAID 5

- RAID 0 to RAID 6
- RAID 1 to RAID 0
- RAID 1 to RAID 5
- RAID 1 to RAID 6
- RAID 5 to RAID 0
- RAID 5 to RAID 6
- RAID 6 to RAID 0
- RAID 6 to RAID 5

Table 21 lists the number of additional drives required when you change the RAID level of a virtual drive.

**Table 21: Additional Drives Required for RAID-Level Migration**

From RAID Level to RAID Level	Original Number of Drives in Drive Group	Additional Drives Required
RAID 0 to RAID 1	RAID 0: 1 drive	1
RAID 0 to RAID 5	RAID 0: 1 drive	2
RAID 0 to RAID 6	RAID 0: 1 drive	3
RAID 1 to RAID 5	RAID 1: 2 drives	1
RAID 1 to RAID 6	RAID 1: 2 drives	1

Follow these steps to migrate the RAID level:

---

**CAUTION:** Back up any data that you want to keep before you change the RAID level of the virtual drive.

---

1. On the main WebBIOS CU screen, select a virtual drive.
2. Click **Virtual Drives**.
3. When the Virtual Drive screen appears, select **Migration only** (and skip to step 6) or **Migration with addition** in the right panel.
4. If you selected **Migration with addition**, select one or more drives from the small window in the lower right of the screen.
5. Select a new RAID level from the drop-down menu on the right.  
The available RAID levels are limited, based on the current RAID level of the virtual drive plus the number of drives available.
6. When you have made your selections, click **Go** at the bottom of the right panel.
7. When the message appears, confirm that you want to migrate the RAID level of the virtual drive.

A reconstruction operation begins on the virtual drive. You must wait until the reconstruction is completed before you perform any other tasks in the WebBIOS CU.

# Chapter 5

## MegaRAID Command Tool

This is the Summary tag that provides a short description of the chapter or document. It can be more than one line, but should be short.

The MegaRAID Command Tool (CT) is a command line interface (CLI) application for SAS. You can use this utility to configure, monitor, and maintain MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers and the devices connected to them.

**NOTE:** The CT supports only the MegaRAID controller. It supports SAS and SATA II, but it does not support other types of MegaRAID controllers, such as U320, SATA I, or IDE.

**NOTE:** The IA-64 release for Windows is similar to the 32-bit release, so you can follow the 32-bit instructions. 32-bit applications that were validated on an x64 system, such as the Intel Markette system, can use the 32-bit instructions, also.

### 5.1 Product Overview

The MegaCLI Configuration Utility is a command line interface application you can use to manage MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers. You can use MegaCLI Configuration Utility to perform the following tasks:

- Configure MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers and attached devices
- Display information about virtual drives and drives for the controller and other storage components
- Display ongoing progress for operations on drives and virtual drives
- Change properties for the virtual drives and drives for the controller and other storage components
- Set, retrieve, and verify controller default settings
- Change the firmware on the controllers
- Monitor the RAID storage systems
- Support RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 (depending on the RAID controller)
- Create and use scripts with the scriptable CLI tool
- Configure drive into groups and virtual drives on the controller
- Display configuration information for the controller, drives, and virtual drives
- Change virtual drive properties on the controller
- Change drive properties on the controller
- Display controller properties
- Load configuration to the controller from a file
- Save the controller configuration to a file

- Start or stop a rebuild, consistency check (CC), or initialization operation
- Enable or disable a background initialization (BGI)
- Stop or display an ongoing background initialization
- Start or display a reconstruction
- Start or stop patrol read
- Set and retrieve patrol read related settings
- Flash new firmware on the SAS RAID controller
- Read and program NVRAM and flash memory directly into DOS
- Display relevant messages on the console and/or in the log file
- Display controller data using one command
- Exit with predefined success or failure exit codes
- Scan, preview, and import foreign configurations
- Set predefined environment variables, such as the number of controllers and virtual drives
- Display firmware event logs
- Display help for how to use the command line options:
- Display battery unit properties
- Display enclosure properties
- Display and set connector mode on supported controllers

The following sections describe the command line options in the MegaCLI Configuration Utility that you can use to perform these functions.

---

**NOTE:** The MegaCLI Configuration Utility has support for the Intel® Itanium (64-bit) platform. MegaCLI is the only application currently supported on IPF system.

---

## 5.2 Novell NetWare, SCO, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS Operating System Support

---

The MegaCLI Configuration Utility functions under the Novell® NetWare®, SCO® OpenServer™, SCO UnixWare®, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS operating systems in the same way that it does under the Windows and Linux operating systems. All of the commands supported for the Windows and Linux operating systems are supported for the NetWare, SCO, and Solaris operating systems as well.

For the SCO OpenServer and SCO UnixWare operating systems, LSI provides an executable file that you can execute from any folder, and an image of the same executable file on a floppy drive. The image filename is `MegaCLI . image`. The floppy disk is provided so that you can distribute MegaCLI and install the executable file later as needed.

For the Solaris operating system, LSI provides an executable file that you can execute from any folder. No installation is required.

For the Novell NetWare operating system, LSI provides an executable file, `MegaCLI . nlm`, that you can execute from any folder. No installation is required. The output of all of the commands appears in the console window.

## 5.3 Command Line Abbreviations and Conventions

### 5.3.1 Abbreviations Used in the Command Line

This section explains the abbreviations and conventions used with MegaCLI Configuration Utility commands.

Table 22 lists the abbreviations for the virtual drive parameters used in the following sections.

**Table 22: Command Line Abbreviations**

Abbreviation	Description
WB	WriteBack write policy
WT	WriteThrough write policy
ADRA	Adaptive Read Ahead read policy
RA	Read Ahead read policy
NORA	Normal Read policy (No read ahead)
DIO	Direct I/O cache policy
CIO	Cached I/O cache policy

### 5.3.2 Conventions

There are some options for which you can specify multiple values.

You can enter commands for a single controller (`-aN`), multiple controllers (`-a0, 1, 2`) or work on all present controllers (`-aALL`). This is denoted as `-aN | -a0, 1, 2 | -aALL` in this document and specifies that you can enter commands for one controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers.

**NOTE:** All options in the MegaRAID Command Tool are position-dependent, unless otherwise specified.

Table 23 describes the conventions used in the options.

**Table 23: Conventions**

Convention	Description
	Specifies "or," meaning you can choose between options.
-aN	N specifies the controller number for the command.
-a0, 1, 2	Specifies the command is for controllers 0, 1, and 2. You can select two or more controllers in this manner.
-aALL	Specifies the command is for all controllers.
-Lx	x specifies the virtual drive number for the command.
-L0, 1, 2	Specifies the command is for virtual drives 0, 1, and 2. You can select two or more virtual drives in this manner.
-La11	Specifies the command is for all virtual drives.

**Table 23: Conventions (Continued)**

Convention	Description
[E0:S0,E1,S1, ...]	Specifies when one or more physical devices need(s) to be specified in the command line. Each [E:S] pair specifies one physical device where E means device ID of the enclosure in which a drive resides, and S means the slot number of the enclosure.  In the case of a physical device directly connected to the SAS port on the controller, with no enclosure involved, the format of [:S] can be used where S means the port number on the controller. For devices attached through the backplane, the firmware provides an enclosure device ID and MegaCLI expects the user input in the format of [E:S]. In the following sections, only the format, [E:S], is used in the command descriptions, although both formats are valid.
[ ]	Indicates that the parameter is optional except when it is used to specify physical devices. For example, [WT] means the write policy (WriteThrough) is optional.  If you enter WT at the command line, the application will use WriteThrough write policy for the virtual drive. Otherwise, it uses the default value for the parameter.
{ }	Indicates that the parameters are grouped and that they must be given at the same time.

You can specify the `-Silent` command line option for all possible functions of the MegaCLI Configuration Utility. If you enter this option at the command line, no message displays on the screen.

## 5.4 Controller Property-Related Options

### 5.4.1 Display Controller Properties

You can use the commands in this section to set or display properties related to the controller(s), such as the virtual drive parameters and factory defaults.

Use the command in [Table 24](#) to display parameters for the selected controller(s).

**Table 24: Controller Parameters**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpAllinfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays information about the controller, including cluster state, BIOS, alarm, firmware version, BIOS version, battery charge counter value, rebuild rate, bus number/device number, present RAM, memory size, serial number of the board, and SAS address.

### 5.4.2 Display Number of Controllers Supported

Use the command in [Table 25](#) to display the number of controllers supported on the system.

**Table 25: Number of Controllers Supported**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpCount
Description	Displays the number of controllers supported on the system and returns the number to the operating system.

### 5.4.3 Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild

Use the command in [Table 26](#) to turn automatic rebuild on or off for the selected controller(s). If you have configured hot spares and enabled automatic rebuild, the RAID controller automatically tries to use them to rebuild failed drives. Automatic rebuild also controls whether a rebuild will start when a drive that was part of the drive group is reinserted.

**Table 26: Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpAutoRbld -Enbl -Dsbl -Dsply -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Enables or disables automatic rebuild on the selected controller(s). The -Dsply option shows the status of the automatic rebuild state.

### 5.4.4 Flush Controller Cache

Use the command in [Table 27](#) to flush the controller cache on the selected controller(s). This option sends the contents of cache memory to the virtual drive(s). If the MegaRAID system must be powered down rapidly, you must flush the contents of the cache memory to preserve data integrity.

**Table 27: Cache Flush on Selected Controller**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpCacheFlush -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Flushes the controller cache on the selected controller(s).

### 5.4.5 Set Controller Properties

This command sets the properties on the selected controller(s). For example, for {RebuildRate -val}, you can enter a percentage between 0 percent and 100 percent as the value for the rebuild rate. (The rebuild rate is the percentage of the compute cycles dedicated to rebuilding failed drives.) At 0 percent, the rebuild is done only if the system is not doing anything else. At 100 percent, the rebuild has a higher priority than any other system activity.

**NOTE:** LSI recommends the default rebuild rate of 30 percent, and the default patrol read rate of 30 percent.

Use the command in [Table 28](#) to display the list of properties you can set for the controller(s).

**Table 28: Set Controller Properties**

Convention	<pre>MegaCli -AdpSetProp {CacheFlushInterval -val} {RebuildRate -val}  {PatrolReadRate -val} {BgiRate -val} {CCRate -val}  {ReconRate -val}  {SpinupDriveCount -val} {SpinupDelay -val} {CoercionMode -val}   {ClusterEnable -val} {PredFailPollInterval -val}  {BatWarnDsbl -val}  {EccBucketSize -val} {EccBucketLeakRate -val} {AbortCCOnError -val} AlarmEnbl   AlarmDsbl   AlarmSilence  {SMARTCpyBkEnbl -val}   -AutoDetectBackPlaneDsbl   -CopyBackDsbl   -LoadBalanceMode   NCQEnbl   NCQDsbl   {SSDSMARTCpyBkEnbl -val}   {MaintainPdFailHistoryEnbl -val}   {EnblSpinDownUnConfigDrvs -val}   {EnblSSDPatrolRead -val}   AutoEnhancedImportEnbl   AutoEnhancedImportDsbl   {-UseFDEOnlyEncrypt -val}   {-PrCorrectUncfgdAreas -val}   -aN  -a0,1,2 -aALL</pre>
Description	<p>Sets the properties on the selected controller(s). The possible settings are:</p> <p>CacheFlushInterval: Cache flush interval in seconds. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>RebuildRate: Rebuild rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>PatrolReadRate: Patrol read rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>BgiRate: Background initialization rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>CCRate: Consistency check rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>ReconRate: Reconstruction rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>SpinupDriveCount: Max number of drives to spin up at one time. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>SpinupDelay: Number of seconds to delay among spinup groups. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>CoercionMode: Drive capacity Coercion mode. Values: 0 - None, 1 - 128 Mbytes, 2 - 1 Gbytes.</p> <p>ClusterEnable: Cluster is enabled or disabled. Values: 0 - Disabled, 1 - Enabled.</p> <p>PredFailPollInterval: Number of seconds between predicted fail polls. Values: 0 to 65535.</p> <p>BatWarnDsbl: Disable warnings for missing battery or missing hardware. Values: 0 - Enabled, 1 - Disabled.</p> <p>EccBucketSize: Size of ECC single-bit-error bucket. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>EccBucketLeakRate: Leak rate (in minutes) of ECC single-bit-error bucket. Values: 0 to 65535.</p> <p>AbortCCOnError:</p> <p>AlarmEnbl: Set alarm to Enabled.</p> <p>AlarmDsbl: Set alarm to Disabled.</p> <p>AlarmSilence: Silence an active alarm.</p> <p>SMARTCpyBkEnbl: Enable copyback operation on Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) errors. Copyback is initiated when the first SMART error occurs on a drive that is part of a virtual drive.</p> <p>AutoDetectBackPlaneDsbl: Detect automatically if the backplane has been disabled.</p> <p>CopyBackDsbl: Disable or enable the copyback operation.</p> <p>LoadBalanceMode: Disable or enable the load balancing mode.</p> <p>NCQEnbl: Enable the native command queuing.</p> <p>NCQDsbl: Disable the native command queuing.</p> <p>SSDSMARTCpyBkEnbl: Enable copyback operation on Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) errors on a Solid State Drive (SSD). Copyback is initiated when the first SMART error occurs on a SSD that is part of a virtual drive.</p> <p>MaintainPdFailHistoryEnbl: Enable maintenance of the history of a failed drive.</p> <p>EnblSpinDownUnConfigDrvs: Enable spindown of unconfigured drives.</p> <p>EnblSSDPatrolRead: Enable the patrol read operation (media scan) on a SSD.</p> <p>AutoEnhancedImportEnbl: Enable the automatic enhanced import of foreign drives.</p> <p>AutoEnhancedImportDsbl: Disable the automatic enhanced import of foreign drives.</p> <p>UseFDEOnlyEncrypt: Use encryption on FDE drives only.</p> <p>PrCorrectUncfgdAreas:</p>

### 5.4.6 Display Specified Controller Properties

Use the command in [Table 29](#) to display specified properties on the selected controller(s).

**Table 29: Display Specified Controller Properties**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpGetProp CacheFlushInterval   RebuildRate   PatrolReadRate  BgiRate   CCRate   ReconRate   SpinupDriveCount   SpinupDelay   CoercionMode   PredFailPollInterval   ClusterEnable   BatWarnDsbl   EccBucketSize   EccBucketLeakRate   EccBucketCount   AlarmDsply   AbortCCOnError   AutoDetectBackPlaneDsbl   CopyBackDsbl   LoadBalanceMode   SMARTCpyBkEnbl   SSDSMARTCpyBkEnbl   MaintainPdFailHistoryEnbl   EnblSpinDownUnConfigDrvs   EnblSSDPatrolRead   NCQDsply   UseFDEOnlyEncrypt   WBSupport   AutoEnhancedImportDsply   PrCorrectUncfgdAreas -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays the properties on the selected controller(s).
	EccBucketCount: Count of single-bit ECC errors currently in the bucket.
	See <a href="#">Table 28</a> for explanations of the other options.

### 5.4.7 Set Factory Defaults

Use the command in [Table 30](#) to set the factory defaults on the selected controller(s).

**Table 30: Set Factory Defaults**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpFacDefSet -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Sets the factory defaults on the selected controller(s).

### 5.4.8 Set SAS Address

Use the command in [Table 31](#) to set the SAS address on the selected controller(s).

**Table 31: Set SAS Address on Controller**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpSetSASA str[0-64] -aN
Description	Sets the controllers SAS address. This string must be a 64-digit hexadecimal number.

### 5.4.9 Set Time and Date on Controller

Use the command in [Table 32](#) to set the time and date on the selected controller(s).

**Table 32: Set Time and Date on Controller**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpSetTime yyyyymmdd HH:mm:ss -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Sets the time and date on the controller. This command uses a 24-hour format. For example, 7 p.m. displays as 19:00:00. The order of date and time is reversible.

### 5.4.10 Display Time and Date on Controller

Use the command in [Table 33](#) to display the time and date on the selected controller(s).

**Table 33: Display Time and Date on Controller**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpGetTime -aN
Description	Displays the time and date on the controller. This command uses a 24-hour format. For example, 7 p.m. would display as 19:00:00.

## 5.5 Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties

You can use the commands in this section to select the settings for Patrol Read. A Patrol Read scans the system for possible drive errors that could lead to drive failure, then takes action to correct the errors. The goal is to protect data integrity by detecting drive failure before the failure can damage data. The corrective actions depend on the virtual drive configuration and the type of errors. Patrol Read affects performance; the more iterations there are, the greater the impact.

### 5.5.1 Set Patrol Read Options

Use the command in [Table 34](#) on the selected controller(s) to set the Patrol Read options.

**Table 34: Set Patrol Read Options**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpPR -Dsb1 EnblAuto EnblMan Start Stop Info   SSDPatrolReadEnbl   SSDPatrolReadDsb1   {-SetStartTime yyyyymmdd hh}   maxConcurrentPD -aN  -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Sets Patrol Read options on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Dsb1: Disables Patrol Read for the selected controller(s).</li> <li>-EnblAuto: Enables Patrol Read automatically for the selected controller(s). This means Patrol Read will start automatically after the controller initialization is complete.</li> <li>-EnblMan: Enables Patrol Read manually for the selected controller(s). This means that Patrol Read does not start automatically; it has to be started manually by selecting the Start command.</li> <li>-Start: Starts Patrol Read for the selected controller(s).</li> <li>-Stop: Stops Patrol Read for the selected controller(s).</li> <li>-Info: Displays the following Patrol Read information for the selected controller(s): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Patrol Read operation mode</li> <li>• Patrol Read execution delay value</li> <li>• Patrol Read status</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>SSDPatrolReadEnbl: Enable the patrol read operation (media scan) on a SSD.  SSDPatrolReadDsb1: Disable the patrol read operation (media scan) on a SSD.  SetStartTime yyyyymmdd hh: Set the start time for the patrol read in year/month/day format.  maxConcurrentPD: Sets the maximum number of concurrent drives that patrol read runs on.</p>

### 5.5.2 Set Patrol Read Delay Interval

Use the command in [Table 35](#) on the selected controller(s) to set the time between Patrol Read iterations.

**Table 35: Set Patrol Read Delay Interval**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpPRSetDelay -Val -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Sets the time between Patrol Read iterations on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Val: Sets delay time between Patrol Read iterations. The value is time of delay in hours. A value of zero means no delay and an immediate restart.</li> </ul>

## 5.6 BIOS-Related Properties

You can use the commands in this section to select the settings for BIOS-related options.

### 5.6.1 Set or Display Bootable Virtual Drive ID

Use the command in [Table 36](#) to set or display the ID of the bootable virtual drive.

**NOTE:** This option does not write a boot sector to the virtual drive. The operating system will not load if the boot sector is incorrect.

**Table 36: Bootable Virtual Drive ID**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBootDrive {-Set -Lx  -physdrv[E0:S0]}   -Get -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Sets or displays the bootable virtual drive ID: -Set: Sets the virtual drive as bootable so that during the next reboot, the BIOS will look for a boot sector in the specified virtual drive. Identifies the physical drive in the virtual drive, by enclosure and slot, to use to boot from. -Get: Displays the bootable virtual drive ID.

### 5.6.2 Select BIOS Status Options

Use the command in [Table 37](#) to set the options for the BIOS status.

**Table 37: Options for BIOS Status**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBIOS -Enbl -Dsbl -Dsply  SOE   BE -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Sets BIOS options. The following are the settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Enbl, -Dsbl, -Dsply: Enables, disables or displays the BIOS status on selected controller(s). -SOE: Stops on BIOS errors during POST for selected controller(s). When set to -SOE, the BIOS stops in case of a problem with the configuration. This gives you the option to enter the configuration utility to resolve the problem. This is available only when you enable the BIOS status. -BE: Bypasses BIOS errors during POST. This is available only when you enable the BIOS status.

## 5.7 Battery Backup Unit-Related Properties

You can use the commands in this section to select the settings for BBU-related options.

### 5.7.1 Display BBU Information

Use the command in [Table 38](#) to display complete information about the BBU for the selected controller(s).

**Table 38: Display BBU Information**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays complete information about the BBU, such as status, capacity information, design information, and properties.

## 5.7.2 Display BBU Status Information

Use the command in [Table 39](#) to display complete information about the status of the BBU, such as temperature and voltage, for the selected controller(s).

**Table 39: Display BBU Status Information**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuStatus -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Displays complete information about the BBU status, such as the temperature and voltage. The information displays in the following formats:</p> <p><b>BBU Status for Adapter: xx</b>            Battery Type: XXXXXX(string)            Voltage: xx mV            Current: xx mA            Temperature: xx C°            Firmware Status: xx            Battery state: xx</p> <p><b>Gas Gauge Status:</b>            Fully Discharged: Yes/No            Fully Charged: Yes/No            Discharging: Yes/No            Initialized: Yes/No            Remaining Time Alarm: Yes/No            Remaining Capacity Alarm: Yes/No            Discharge Terminated: Yes/No            Over Temperature: Yes/No            Charging Terminated: Yes/No            Over Charged: Yes/No</p> <p>Additional status information displays differently for iBBU™ and BBU.</p> <p><b>For iBBU:</b>            Relative State of Charge: xx            Charger System State: xx            Charger System Ctrl: xx            Charging Current: xx mA            Absolute State of Charge: xx%            Max Error: xx%</p> <p><b>For BBU:</b>            Relative State of Charge: xx            Charger Status: xx            Remaining Capacity: xx mAh            Full Charge Capacity: mAh            isSOHGood: Yes/No</p>

### 5.7.3 Display BBU Capacity

Use the command in [Table 40](#) to display the BBU capacity for the selected controller(s).

**Table 40: Display BBU Capacity Information**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuCapacityInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays BBU capacity information. The information displays in the following format: BBU Capacity Info for Adapter: x Relative State of Charge: xx% Absolute State of Charge: xx% Remaining Capacity: xx mAh Full Charge Capacity: xx mAh Run Time to Empty: xxx Min Average Time to Empty: xxx Min Average Time to Full: xxx Min Cycle Count: xx Max Error: xx%

### 5.7.4 Display BBU Design Parameters

Use the command in [Table 41](#) to display BBU design parameters for the selected controller(s).

**Table 41: Display BBU Design Parameters**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuDesignInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays information about the BBU design parameters. The information displays in the following formats: BBU Design Info for Adapter: x Date of Manufacture: mm/dd, yyyy Design Capacity: xxx mAh Design Voltage: mV Serial Number: 0xhhhh Pack Stat Configuration: 0xhhhh Manufacture Name: XXXXXX(String) Device Name: XXXXXX(String) Device Chemistry: XXXXXX(String)

### 5.7.5 Display Current BBU Properties

Use the command in [Table 42](#) to display the current BBU properties for the selected controller(s).

**Table 42: Display Current BBU Properties**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuProperties -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays current properties of the BBU. The information displays in the following formats: BBU Properties for Adapter: x Auto Learn Period: xxx Sec Next Learn Time: xxxx Sec Learn Delay Interval: xx Hours Auto-Learn Mode: Warn via Event/Disabled/Enabled

### 5.7.6 Start BBU Learning Cycle

Use the command in [Table 43](#) to start the BBU learning cycle on the selected controller(s). A learning cycle is a battery calibration operation performed by the controller periodically (approximately every three months) to determine the condition of the battery.

**Table 43: Start BBU Learning Cycle**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -BbuLearn -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Starts the learning cycle on the BBU. No parameter is needed for this option.

### 5.7.7 Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode

Use the command in [Table 44](#) to place the battery into Low-Power Storage mode on the selected controller(s). This saves battery power consumption.

**Table 44: Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -BbuMfgSleep -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Places the battery in Low-Power Storage mode. The battery automatically exits this state after 5 seconds.

## 5.7.8 Set BBU Properties

Use the command in [Table 45](#) to set the BBU properties on the selected controller(s) after reading from the file.

**Table 45: Set BBU Properties**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -SetBbuProperties -f<fileName> -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Sets the BBU properties on the selected controller(s) after reading from the file. The information displays in the following formats: autoLearnPeriod = 1800Sec nextLearnTime = 12345678Sec Seconds past 1/1/2000 learnDelayInterval = 24hours Not greater than 7 days autoLearnMode = 0 0 – Enabled, 1 - Disabled, 2 – WarnViaEvent.
	<b>NOTE:</b> You can change only two of these parameters, learnDelayInterval and autoLearnMode.

## 5.8 Options for Displaying Logs Kept at Firmware Level

Use the commands in this section to select the display settings for the event log and BBU terminal log, which are kept at the firmware level.

### 5.8.1 Event Log Management

Use the command in [Table 46](#) to manage the event entries in the event log for the selected controller(s).

**Table 46: Event Log Management**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpEventLog -GetEventlogInfo   -GetEvents {-info -warning -critical -fatal}   GetSinceShutdown {-info -warning -critical -fatal}   GetSinceReboot {-info -warning -critical -fatal}   IncludeDeleted {-info -warning -critical -fatal}   {GetLatest <number> {-info -warning -critical -fatal} } -f <filename>   Clear -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL   {GetCCIncon} -f <filename> -LX  -L0,2,5... -LALL -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Manages event log entries. The following are the settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -GetEventlogInfo: Displays overall event information such as total number of events, newest sequence number, oldest sequence number, shutdown sequence number, reboot sequence number, and clear sequence number. -GetEvents: Gets event log entry details. The information shown consists of total number of entries available at firmware side since the last clear and details of each entries of the error log. Start_entry specifies the initial event log entry when displaying the log. -GetSinceShutdown: Displays all of the events since last controller shutdown. -GetSinceReboot: Displays all of the events since last controller reboot. -IncludeDeleted: Displays all events, including deleted events. -GetLatest: Displays the latest number of events, if any exist. The event data will be writtent to the file in reverse order. -Clear: Clears the event log for the selected controller(s). -GetCCIncon:

## 5.8.2 Set BBU Terminal Logging

Use the command in [Table 47](#) to set the BBU terminal logging for the selected controller(s).

**Table 47: Set BBU Terminal Logging**

Convention	MegaCli -FwTermLog -Bbuoff   -BbuoffTemp   -Bbuon   -BbuGet   -Dsply   -Clear -aN   -a0,1,2   -aALL
Description	<p>Sets BBU terminal logging options. The following are the settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Bbuoff: Turns off the BBU for firmware terminal logging. To turn off the BBU for logging, you have to shut down your system or turn off the power to the system after you run the command.</li> <li>-BbuoffTemp: Temporarily turns off the BBU for TTY (firmware terminal) logging. The battery will be turned on at the next reboot.</li> <li>-Bbuon: Turns on the BBU for TTY (firmware terminal) logging.</li> <li>-BbuGet: Displays the current BBU settings for TTY logging.</li> <li>-Dsply: Displays the TTY log (firmware terminal log) entries with details on the given controllers. The information shown consists of the total number of entries available at a firmware side.</li> <li>-Clear: Clears the TTY log.</li> </ul>

## 5.9 Configuration-Related Options

You can specify the drives by using the Enclosure ID:Slot ID for SAS controllers. This assumes that all drives are connected to the controller through an enclosure. If the drives are not connected to an enclosure, it is assumed that they are connected to Enclosure 0. In this case there is no slot, so you can use the pdlist command to get the slot equivalent number. (This applies to all commands that use the Enclosure ID:Slot ID format.) MegaCLI expects the input in [:S] format for directly attached devices.

In the following options, [E0:S0, E1:S1] specifies the enclosure ID and slot ID for the drive.

### 5.9.1 Create a RAID Drive Group from All Unconfigured Good Drives

Use the command in [Table 49](#) to create one RAID drive group out of all of the unconfigured good drives, and a hot spare, if desired. This is for RAID levels 0, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60. All free drives are used to create a new drive group and, if desired, one hot spare drive. If it is not possible to use all of the free drives, the command will abort with a related error level. If there are drives of different capacities, the largest drive is used to make the hot spare.

**NOTE:** A virtual drive cannot have both SAS drives and SATA drives. Therefore, if the remaining free drives are SAS and SATA, a drive group cannot be created. The command will abort with a related error level.

**NOTE:** Firmware supports only 32 drives per drive group, so if there are more than 32 unconfigured good drives, MegaCLI cannot configure any of the drives, and the command will abort.

**Table 48: Create a Drive Group from All of the Unconfigured Drives**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgLDAdd -RX[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] [WT   WB] [NORA   RA   ADRA] [Direct   Cached] [CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU] [-szXXX [-szYYY ...]] [-strpszM] [-Hsp[E0:S0,...]] [-AfterLdX]     -Force [FDE CtrlBased]
Description	<p>Creates one RAID drive group out of all of the unconfigured good drives, and a hot spare, if desired. This is for RAID levels 0, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60. All free drives are used to create a new drive group and, if desired, one hot spare drive.</p> <p>-Rx[E0:S0, . . .]: Specifies the RAID level and the drive enclosure/slot numbers used to construct a drive group.</p> <p>-WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy.</p> <p>-NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy.</p> <p>-Direct, -Cached: Selects cache policy.</p> <p>-CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU: Specifies whether to use write cache when the BBU is bad.</p> <p>Hsp: Specifies drive to make the hot spare with.</p> <p>-Force: Specifies that drive coercion is used to make the capacity of the drives compatible. Drive coercion is a tool for forcing drives of varying capacities to the same capacity so they can be used in a drive group.</p> <hr/> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Previously -szXXX expressed capacity in Mbytes but now you can enter the capacity in your choice of units. For example, to create a virtual drive of 10 Gbytes, enter the size as sz10GB. If you do not enter a unit, by default it is considered as Mbytes.</p>

## 5.9.2 Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration

Use the command in [Table 49](#) to add a RAID level 0, 1, 5, or 6 configuration to the existing configuration on the selected controller.  
For RAID levels 10, 50, or 60, see [Section 5.9.3, Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration](#)

**Table 49: Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgLDAdd -R0 -R1 -R5 -R6[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] [WT   WB] [NORA   RA   ADRA] [Direct   Cached] [CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU] [-szXXXXXXXX [-szYYYYYYY [... ]]] [-strpszM] [-Hsp[E5:S5,...]] [-afterLdX] -aN
Description	Adds a RAID level 0, 1, 5, or 6 configuration to a specified controller. Even if no configuration is present, you have the option to write the configuration to the controller.

Note that RAID 1 supports up to 32 drives in a single span of 16 drive groups.

RAID 1 requires an even number of drives, as data from one drive is mirrored to the other drive in each RAID 1 drive group.

-Rx [E0:S0, . . .]: Specifies the RAID level and the drive enclosure/slot numbers to construct a drive group.

-WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy.

-NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy.

-Cached, -Direct: Selects cache policy.

[{CachedBadBBU|NoCachedBadBBU }]: Specifies : Specifies whether to use write cache when the BBU is bad.

-szXXXXXXXX: Specifies the capacity for the virtual drive, where XXXX is a decimal number of Mbytes. However, the actual capacity of the virtual drive can be smaller, because the driver requires the number of blocks from the drives in each virtual drive to be aligned to the stripe size. If multiple size options are specified, CT configures the virtual drives in the order of the options entered in the command line.

The configuration of a particular virtual drive will fail if the remaining capacity of the drive group is too small to configure the virtual drive with the specified capacity.

This option can also be used to create a configuration on the free space available in the drive group.

-strpszM: Specifies the stripe size, where the stripe size values are 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024 KBytes.

Hsp [E5:S5, . . .]: Creates hot spares when you create the configuration. The new hot spares will be dedicated to the virtual drive used in creating the configuration. This option does not allow you to create global hot spares. To create global hot spares, you must use the -PdHsp command with proper subcommands.

You can also use this option to create a configuration on the free space available in the virtual drive. You can specify which free slot should be used by specifying the -AfterLdX: This command is optional. By default, the application uses the first free slot available in the virtual drive. This option is valid only if the virtual drive is already used for configuration.

### 5.9.3 Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration

Use the command in [Table 50](#) to add a RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 configuration to the existing configuration on the selected controller.

For RAID levels 0, 1, 5, or 6, see [Section 5.9.2, Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration](#)

**Table 50: Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgSpanAdd -R10 R50 R60 -Array0[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] -Array1[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] [...] [WT   WB] [NORA   RA   ADRA] [Direct   Cached] [CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU] [-szXXXXXXXX [-szYYYYYYY [... ]]] [-strpszM] [-afterLdX] [FDE CtrlBased] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Creates a RAID level 10, 50, or 60 (spanned) configuration from the specified drive groups. Even if no configuration is present, you must use this option to write the configuration to the controller.</p> <p>Note that RAID 10 supports up to eight spans with a maximum of 32 drives in each span. (There are factors, such as the type of controller, that limit the number of drives you can use.) RAID 10 requires an even number of drives, as data from one drive is mirrored to the other drive in each RAID 1 drive group. You can have an even or odd number of spans.</p> <p>Multiple drive groups are specified using the -ArrayX[E0:S0, . . . ] option. (Note that X starts from 0, not 1.) All of the drive groups must have the same number of drives. At least two drive groups must be provided. The order of options {WT  WB} {NORA   RA   ADRA} {Direct   Cached} is flexible.</p> <p>The size option, -szXXXXXXXX, can be accepted to allow slicing in the spanned drive groups if the controller supports this feature. The [-afterLdX] option is accepted if the size option is accepted. CT exits and does not create a configuration if the size or the afterLd option is specified but the controller does not support slicing in the spanned drive groups.</p>
	<p><b>NOTE:</b> Previously -szXXX expressed capacity in Mbytes but now you can enter the capacity in your choice of units. For example, to create a virtual drive of 10 Gbytes, enter the size as sz10GB. If you do not enter a unit, by default it is considered as Mbytes.</p>

### 5.9.4 Clear the Existing Configuration

Use the command in [Table 51](#) to clear the existing configuration on the selected controller(s).

**Table 51: Clear Existing Configuration**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgClr -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Clears the existing configuration.

### 5.9.5 Save the Configuration on the Controller

Use the command in [Table 52](#) to save the configuration for the selected controller(s) to the given filename.

**Table 52: Save Configuration on the Controller**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgSave -f FileName -aN
Description	Saves the configuration for the selected controller(s) to the given filename.

### 5.9.6 Restore the Configuration Data from File

Use the command in [Table 53](#) to read the configuration from the file and load it on the selected controller(s). You can restore the read/write properties and RAID configuration using hot spares.

**Table 53: Restore Configuration Data from File**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgRestore -f FileName -aN
Description	<p>Reads the configuration from the file and loads it on the controller. MegaCLI can store or restore all read and write controller properties, all read and write properties for virtual drives, and the RAID configuration including hot spares. Note the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MegaCLI does not validate the setup when restoring the RAID configuration.</li> <li>• The -CfgSave option stores the configuration data and controller properties in the file. Configuration data has only the device ID and sequence number information of the drives used in the configuration. The CfgRestore option will fail if the same device IDs of the drives are not present.</li> </ul>

### 5.9.7 Manage Foreign Configuration Information

Use the command in [Table 54](#) to manage configurations from other controllers, called *foreign configurations*, for the selected controller(s). You can scan, preview, import, and clear foreign configurations.

**NOTE:** The actual status of virtual drives and drives can differ from the information displayed in the -Scan option. LSI suggests that you run -Preview before you import a foreign configuration.

**Table 54: Manage Foreign Configuration Information**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgForeign -Scan   [-SecurityKey sssssssssss]   -Dsply [x]   [-SecurityKey sssssssssss]   -Preview [x]   [-SecurityKey sssssssssss]   -Import [x]   [-SecurityKey sssssssssss]   -Clear [x]   [-SecurityKey sssssssssss] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Manages foreign configurations. The options for this command are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Scan: Scans and displays available foreign configurations.</li> <li>-SecurityKey: This is a key based on a user-provided string. The controller uses the security key to lock and unlock access to the secure user data. This key is encrypted into the security key blob and stored on the controller. If the security key is unavailable, user data is irretrievably lost. You must be careful to never lose the security key.</li> <li>-Preview: Provides a preview of the imported foreign configuration. The foreign configuration ID (FID) is optional.</li> <li>-Dsply: Displays the foreign configuration.</li> <li>-Import: Imports the foreign configuration. The FID is optional.</li> <li>-Clear [FID]: Clears the foreign configuration. The FID is optional.</li> </ul>

### 5.9.8 Delete Specified Virtual Drive(s)

Use the command in [Table 55](#) to delete one, multiple, or all virtual drives on the selected controller(s).

**Table 55: Delete Specified Virtual Drives**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgLDDel -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Deletes the specified virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s). You can delete one virtual drive, multiple virtual drives, or all of the selected virtual drives on selected controller(s).

### 5.9.9 Display the Free Space

Use the command in [Table 56](#) to display the free space that is available to use for configuration on the selected controller(s).

**Table 56: Display Free Space**

Convention	MegaCli -CfgFreeSpaceInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays all of the free space available for configuration on the selected controller(s). The information displayed includes the number of drive groups, the number of spans in each drive group, the number of free space slots in each drive group, the start block, and the size (in both blocks and megabytes) of each free space slot.

## 5.10 Virtual Drive-Related Options

You can use the commands in this section to select settings for the virtual drives and perform actions on them.

### 5.10.1 Display Virtual Drive Information

Use the command in [Table 57](#) to display virtual drive information for the selected controller(s).

**Table 57: Display Virtual Drive Information**

Convention	MegaCli -LDInfo -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays information about the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s). This information includes the name, RAID level, RAID level qualifier, capacity in megabytes, state, stripe size, number of drives, span depth, cache policy, access policy, and ongoing activity progress, if any, including initialization, background initialization, consistency check, and reconstruction.

### 5.10.2 Change the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters

Use the command in [Table 58](#) to change the cache policy and access policy for the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 58: Change Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters**

Convention	MegaCli -LDSetProp WT   WB [-Immediate]   RA  NORA   ADRA  -Cached Direct CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU}   -RW RO Blocked   {-Name nameString}   -EnDskCache DisDskCache -Lx  -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Allows you to change the following virtual drive parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy.</li> <li>-NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy.</li> <li>-Cached, -Direct: Selects cache policy.</li> <li>-CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU : Specifies whether to use write cache when the BBU is bad.</li> <li>-RW, -RO, Blocked: Selects access policy.</li> <li>-EnDskCache: Enables drive cache.</li> <li>-DisDskCache: Disables drive cache.</li> </ul>

### 5.10.3 Display the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters

Use the command in [Table 59](#) to display cache and access parameters for the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 59: Display Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters**

Convention	MegaCli -LDGetProp -Cache   -Access   -Name   -DskCache -Lx -L0,1,2  -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Displays the cache and access policies of the virtual drive(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Cache: -Cached, Direct: Displays cache policy.</li> <li>-WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy.</li> <li>-NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy.</li> <li>-Access: -RW, -RO, Blocked: Displays access policy.</li> <li>-DskCache: Displays drive cache policy.</li> </ul>

### 5.10.4 Manage Virtual Drives Initialization

Use the command in [Table 60](#) to manage initialization of the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 60: Manage Virtual Drive Initialization**

Convention	MegaCli -LDInit {-Start [Fast   Full]}  -Abort -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Allows you to select the following actions for virtual drive initialization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Start: Starts the initialization (writing 0s) on the virtual drive(s) and displays the progress (this is optional). The fast initialization option initializes the first and last 8 Mbyte areas on the virtual drive. The full option allows you to initialize the entire virtual drive.</li> <li>-Abort: Aborts the ongoing initialization on the virtual drive(s).</li> <li>-ShowProg: Displays the snapshot of the ongoing initialization, if any.</li> <li>-ProgDsply: Displays the progress of the ongoing initialization. The routine continues to display the progress until at least one initialization is completed or a key is pressed.</li> </ul>

### 5.10.5 Manage a Consistency Check

Use the command in [Table 61](#) to manage a data consistency check (CC) on the virtual drives for the selected controller(s).

**Table 61: Manage Consistency Check**

Convention	MegaCli -LDCC -Start -Abort -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Allows you to select the following actions for a data CC: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Start: Starts a CC on the virtual drive(s), then displays the progress (optional) and time remaining.</li> <li>-Abort: Aborts an ongoing CC on the virtual drive(s).</li> <li>-ShowProg: Displays a snapshot of an ongoing CC.</li> <li>-ProgDsply: Displays ongoing CC progress. The progress displays until at least one CC is completed or a key is pressed.</li> </ul>

### 5.10.6 Manage a Background Initialization

Use the command in [Table 62](#) to enable, disable, or suspend background initialization (BGI), as well as display initialization progress on the selected controller(s).

**Table 62: Manage Background Initialization**

Convention	MegaCli -LDBI -Enbl -Dsbl GetSetting -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -I0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Manages background initialization options. The following are the background initialization settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Enbl, -Dsbl: Enables or disables the background initialization on the selected controller(s). -ProgDsply: Displays an ongoing background initialization in a loop. This function completes only when all background initialization processes complete or you press a key to exit. -ShowProg: Displays the current progress value. -GetSetting: Displays current background initialization setting ( <i>Enabled</i> or <i>Disabled</i> ).

### 5.10.7 Perform a Virtual Drive Reconstruction

Use the command in [Table 63](#) to perform a reconstruction of the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 63: Virtual Drive Reconstruction**

Convention	MegaCli -LDRecon {-Start -Rx [Add   Rmv PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] ] }  -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -aN
Description	Controls and manages virtual drive reconstruction. The following are the virtual drive reconstruction settings you can select on a single controller: -Start: Starts a reconstruction of the selected virtual drive to a new RAID level. -Rx: Changes the RAID level of the virtual drive when you start reconstruction. You might need to add or remove a drive to make this possible. -Start -Add PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...]: Adds listed drives to the virtual drive and starts reconstruction on the selected virtual drive. -Start -Rmv PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...]: Removes one drive from the existing virtual drives and starts a reconstruction. -ShowProg: Displays a snapshot of the ongoing reconstruction process. -ProgDsply: Allows you to view the ongoing reconstruction. The routine continues to display progress until at least one reconstruction is completed or a key is pressed.

### 5.10.8 Display Information about Virtual Drives and Drives

Use the command in [Table 64](#) to display information about the virtual drives and drives for the selected controller(s), such as the number of virtual drives, RAID level, and drive capacity.

**Table 64: Display Virtual Drive and Drive Information**

Convention	MegaCli -LDPDInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays information about the present virtual drive(s) and drive(s) on the selected controller(s). Displays information including the number of virtual drives, the RAID level of the virtual drives, and drive capacity information, which includes raw capacity, coerced capacity, uncoerced capacity, and the SAS address.

### 5.10.9 Display the Number of Virtual Drives

Use the command in [Table 65](#) to display the number of virtual drives attached to the controller.

**Table 65: Display Number of Virtual Drives**

Convention	MegaCli -LDGetNum -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays the number of virtual drives attached to the controller. The return value is the number of virtual drives.

## 5.11 Drive-Related Options

You can use the commands in this section to select settings for the drives and perform actions on them.

### 5.11.1 Display Drive Information

Use the command in [Table 66](#) to display information about the drives on the selected controller(s).

**Table 66: Display Drive Information**

Convention	MegaCli -PDInfo -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Provides information about the drives connected to the enclosure and controller slot. This includes information such as the enclosure number, slot number, device ID, sequence number, drive type, capacity (if a drive), foreign state, firmware state, and inquiry data.  For SAS devices, this includes additional information such as the SAS address of the drive. For SAS expanders, this includes additional information such as the number of devices connected to the expander.

### 5.11.2 Set the Drive State to Online

Use the command in [Table 67](#) to set the state of a drive to *Online*. In an online state, the drive is working normally and is a part of a configured virtual drive.

**Table 67: Set Drive State to Online**

Convention	MegaCli -PDOnline -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Changes the drive state to <i>Online</i> .

### 5.11.3 Set the Drive State to Offline

Use the command in [Table 68](#) to set the state of a drive to *Offline*. In the offline state, the virtual drive is not available to the RAID controller.

**Table 68: Set Drive State to Offline**

Convention	MegaCli -PDOffline -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Changes the drive state to <i>Offline</i> .

### 5.11.4 Change the Drive State to Unconfigured Good

Use the command in [Table 69](#) to change the state of a drive from *Unconfigured-Bad* to *Unconfigured-Good*.

**Table 69: Change Drive State to Unconfigured Good**

Convention	MegaCli -PDMakeGood -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...]   [-Force] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Changes the drive state to <i>Unconfigured Good</i> . Force: Force the drive to the <i>Unconfigured Good</i> state.

### 5.11.5 Change Drive State

Use the command in [Table 70](#) to change the drive state, as it relates to hot spares, and to associate the drive to an enclosure and virtual drive for the selected controller(s).

**Table 70: Change Drive State**

Convention	MegaCli -PDHSP {-Set [{-Dedicated -ArrayN  -Array0,1...}] [-EnclAffinity] [-nonRevertible] }   -Rmv -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Changes the drive state (as it relates to hot spares) and associates the drive to an enclosure and virtual drive on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Set: Changes the drive state to <i>dedicated hot spare</i> for the enclosure. -Rmv: Changes the drive state to <i>ready</i> (removes the hot spare). -EnclAffinity: Associates the hot spare to a selected enclosure. -Array0: Dedicates the hot spare to a specific virtual drive.

### 5.11.6 Manage a Drive Initialization

Use the command in [Table 71](#) to manage a drive initialization on the selected controller(s).

**Table 71: Drive Initialization**

Convention	MegaCli -PDClear -Start   -Stop   -ShowProg   -ProgDsply -PhysDrv [E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Manages initialization or displays initialization progress on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Start: Starts initialization on the selected drive(s). -Stop: Stops an ongoing initialization on the selected drive(s). -ShowProg: Displays the current progress percentage and time remaining for the initialization. This option is useful for running the application through scripts. -ProgDsply: Displays the ongoing clear progress. The routine continues to display the initialization progress until at least one initialization is completed or a key is pressed.

### 5.11.7 Rebuild a Drive

Use the command in [Table 72](#) to start or stop a rebuild on a drive and display the rebuild progress. When a drive in a RAID drive group fails, you can rebuild the drive by recreating the data that was stored on the drive before it failed.

**Table 72: Rebuild a Drive**

Convention	MegaCli -PDRbld -Start   -Stop   -ShowProg   -ProgDsply -PhysDrv [E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Manages a drive rebuild or displays the rebuild progress on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers. Note that the drive must meet the capacity requirements before it can be rebuilt, and it must be part of a drive group: -Start: Starts a rebuild on the selected drive(s) and displays the rebuild progress (optional). -Stop: Stops an ongoing rebuild on the selected drive(s). -ShowProg: Displays the current progress percentage and time remaining for the rebuild. This option is useful for running the application through scripts. -ProgDsply: Displays the ongoing rebuild progress. This routine displays the rebuild progress until at least one initialization is completed or a key is pressed.

### 5.11.8 Locate the Drive(s) and Activate LED

Use the command in [Table 73](#) to locate the drive(s) for the selected controller(s) and activate the drive activity LED.

**Table 73: Locate Drive and Activate LED**

Convention	MegaCli -PDLocate -PhysDrv [E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Locates the drive(s) for the selected controller(s) and activates the drive activity LED.

### 5.11.9 Mark the Configured Drive as Missing

Use the command in [Table 74](#) to mark the configured drive as missing for the selected controller(s).

**Table 74: Mark Configured Drive as Missing**

Convention	MegaCli -PDMarkMissing -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Marks the configured drive as missing for the selected controller(s).

### 5.11.10 Display the Drives in Missing Status

Use the command in [Table 75](#) to mark the configured drive as missing for the selected controller(s)..

**Table 75: Display Drives in Missing Status**

Convention	MegaCli -PDGetMissing -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays the drive(s) in missing status. The format is:  <pre>No   Row  Column SizeExpected(MB) 0    x    y      zzzzzzzz ... Where x is the index to the drive groups, y is the index to the drive in that drive group, and zzzzzz is the minimum capacity of the drive that can be used as a replacement.</pre>

### 5.11.11 Replace the Configured Drives and Start an Automatic Rebuild

Use the command in [Table 76](#) to replace configured drive(s) and start an automatic rebuild of the drive for the selected controller(s).

**Table 76: Replace Configured Drive(s) and Start Automatic Rebuild**

Convention	MegaCli -PDReplaceMissing -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1....] -ArrayX -RowY -aN
Description	Replaces the configured drives that are identified as missing and then starts an automatic rebuild.

### 5.11.12 Prepare the Unconfigured Drive for Removal

Use the command in [Table 77](#) to prepare the unconfigured drive(s) for removal from the selected controller(s).

**Table 77: Prepare Unconfigured Drive(s) for Removal**

Convention	MegaCli -PDPrpRmv [-Undo] - PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Prepares unconfigured drive(s) for removal. The firmware will spin down this drive. The drive state is set to <i>unaffiliated</i> , which marks it as offline even though it is not a part of configuration.  The -Undo option undoes this operation. If you select undo, the firmware marks this drive as <i>unconfigured good</i> .

### 5.11.13 Display Total Number of Drives

Use the command in [Table 78](#) to display the total number of drives attached to an controller. Drives can be attached directly or through enclosures.

**Table 78: Display Number of Drives Attached to an Controller**

Convention	MegaCli -PDGetNum -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays the total number of drives attached to an controller. Drives can be attached directly or through enclosures. The return value is the number of drives.

### 5.11.14 Display List of Physical Devices

Use the command in [Table 79](#) to display a list of the physical devices connected to the selected controller(s).

**Table 79: Display List of Physical Devices Attached to Controller(s)**

Convention	MegaCli -PDList -aN -a0,1.. -aAll
Description	Displays information about all drives and other devices connected to the selected controller(s). This includes information such as the drive type, capacity (if a drive), serial number, and firmware version of the device. For SAS devices, this includes additional information such as the SAS address of the device. For SAS expanders, this includes additional information such as the number of drives connected to the expander.

### 5.11.15 Download Firmware to the Physical Devices

Use the command in [Table 80](#) to download firmware to the physical devices connected to the selected controller(s).

**Table 80: Download Firmware to the Physical Devices**

Convention	MegaCli -PdFwDownload - -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1....] --f <filename> -aN -a0,1,2 -aAll
Description	Flashes the firmware with the file specified at the command line. Firmware files used to flash the physical drive can be of any format. The CLI utility assumes that you provide a valid firmware image and flashes the same. The physical device has to do error checking. Firmware files in .dlp format can be flashed with the DOS version of the command tool only.

## 5.12 Enclosure-Related Options

The commands in this section are used for enclosures.

Use the command in [Table 81](#) to display enclosure information for selected controller(s).

**Table 81: Display Enclosure Information**

Convention	MegaCli -EncInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays information about the enclosure for the selected controller(s).

## 5.13 Flashing the Firmware

The options in this section describe the functionality of the existing flash application. The firmware flash options do not require input from the user.

### 5.13.1 Flash the Firmware with the ROM File

Use the command in [Table 82](#) to flash the firmware with the ROM file specified at the command line for the selected controller(s).

**Table 82: Flash Firmware with ROM File**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpFwFlash -f filename [-NoSigChk] [-NoVerChk]-aN  -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	<p>Flashes the firmware with the ROM file specified at the command line.</p> <p>The <code>-NoSigChk</code> option forces the application to flash the firmware even if the check word on the file does not match the required check word for the controller. This option flashes the firmware only if the existing firmware version on the controller is lower than the version on the ROM image.</p> <p>If you specify <code>-NoVerChk</code>, also, the application flashes the controller firmware without checking the version of the firmware image. The version check applies only to the firmware (APP.ROM) version.</p> <p>This command also supports the "Mode 0" flash functionality. For Mode 0 flash, the controller number is not valid. There are two possible methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select which controller to flash after the controllers are detected.</li> <li>• Flash the firmware on all present controllers.</li> </ul> <p>XML output data is generated by this option.</p>

### 5.13.2 Flash the Firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM File

Use the command in [Table 83](#) to flash the firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM file specified at the command line for the selected controller(s). This option is for DOS only.

**Table 83: Flash Firmware in Mode 0 with ROM File**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpM0Flash -f filename
Description	<p>Flashes the firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM file listed on the command line.</p> <p>This option supports the Mode 0 flash functionality. For Mode 0 flash, the controller number is not valid. The method to handle this is to flash the firmware on all present controllers which are compatible with the image.</p>

## 5.14 SAS Topology

The commands in this section are used to display SAS topology.

Use the command in [Table 84](#) to display the PHY connection information for physical PHY M on the selected controller(s). Each PHY can form one side of the physical link in a connection with a PHY on a different device. The physical link contains four wires that form two differential signal pairs. One differential pair transmits signals, and the other differential pair receives signals. Both differential pairs operate simultaneously and allow concurrent data transmission in both the receive and the transmit directions. PHYs are contained within ports.

A port can contain a single PHY or can contain multiple PHYs. A narrow port contains a single PHY, and a wide port contains multiple PHYs.

**Table 84: Display PHY Connection Information**

Convention	MegaCli -PHYInfo -phyM -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Displays PHY connection information for physical PHY M on the controller(s).

## 5.15 Diagnostic-Related Options

### 5.15.1 Start Controller Diagnostics

The commands in this section are used to run diagnostic tests.

Use the command in [Table 85](#) to start the controller diagnostic for a set amount of time.

**Table 85: Start Diagnostics Setting**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpDiag [val] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Sets the amount of time for the controller diagnostic to run.

### 5.15.2 Start Battery Test

Use the command in [Table 86](#) to start the battery test. This command requires a system reboot.

**Table 86: Start Battery Test**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpBatTest -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
Description	Starts the battery test. This command requires that you turn off the power to the system, and then turn on the power and reboot the system.

### 5.15.3 Start NVRAM Diagnostic

Use the command in [Table 87](#) to start the controller NVRAM diagnostic for a set amount of time. This option is for DOS only.

**Table 87: Start NVRAM Diagnostic**

Convention	MegaCli -AdpNVRAM {-Read -Write -filename} -Clear [-StartOffset 0xXXXX] [-EndOffset 0xXXXX] aN
Description	Starts the NVRAM diagnostic. -Read: Reads the content in NVRAM and writes the data to file <i>filename</i> . -Write: Reads data from file <i>filename</i> and writes to NVRAM. -Clear: Writes 0 to NVRAM at the specified range from start offset to end offset. -StartOffset/-EndOffset: Specifies the start offset and/or end offset in NVRAM. If you do not use the -StartOffset and -EndOffset options, the default StartOffset is 0 and the default EndOffset is the end of actual NVRAM size.

## 5.16 Miscellaneous Options

The commands in this section are used to display various information.

### 5.16.1 Display the MegaCLI Version

Use the command in [Table 88](#) to display the version number of the MegaCLI utility.

**Table 88: Display MegaCLI Version**

Convention	MegaCli -v
Description	Displays the version number of the MegaCLI utility.

### 5.16.2 Display Help for MegaCLI

Use the command in [Table 89](#) to display help information for the MegaCLI utility.

**Table 89: Display Help for MegaCLI**

Convention	<code>MegaCli -h -Help ?</code>
Description	Displays help for the MegaCLI utility.

# Chapter 6

## MegaRAID Storage Manager Overview and Installation

This chapter provides a brief overview of the MegaRAID Storage Manager (MSM) software and explains how to install it on the supported operating systems.

### 6.1 Overview

MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to configure, monitor, and maintain storage configurations on LSI® SAS controllers. The MegaRAID Storage Manager graphical user interface (GUI) makes it easy for you to create and manage storage configurations.

#### 6.1.1 Creating Storage Configurations

MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to easily configure the controllers, drives, and virtual drives on your workstation or server. The Configuration Wizard greatly simplifies the process of creating drive groups and virtual drives.

You can use the Configuration Wizard Auto Configuration mode to automatically create the best possible configuration with the available hardware. You can use the Guided Configuration mode, which asks you a few brief questions about the configuration, and then creates it for you. Or you can use the Manual Configuration mode, which gives you complete control over all aspects of the storage configuration.

The Modify Drive Group Wizard enables you to increase the capacity of a virtual drive and to change the RAID level of a drive group.

---

**NOTE:** The Modify Drive Group Wizard was previously known as the Reconstruction Wizard.

---

#### 6.1.2 Monitoring Storage Devices

MegaRAID Storage Manager software displays the status of controllers, virtual drives, and drives on the workstation or server that you are monitoring. System errors and events are recorded in an event log file and are displayed on the screen. Special device icons appear on the screen to notify you of drive failures and other events that require immediate attention.

#### 6.1.3 Maintaining Storage Configurations

You can use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to perform system maintenance tasks such as running patrol read operations, updating firmware, and running consistency checks on drive groups that support redundancy.

### 6.2 Hardware and Software Requirements

The hardware requirements for MegaRAID Storage Manager software are as follows:

- PC-compatible computer with an IA-32 (32-bit) Intel Architecture processor or an EM64T (64-bit) processor and at least 128 Mbytes of system memory (256 Mbytes recommended)
- Drive with at least 50 Mbytes available free space

The supported operating systems for the MegaRAID Storage Manager software are as follows:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows XP, and Microsoft Windows Vista
- Red Hat Linux 3.0, 4.0, and 5.0
- Solaris 10 x86
- SUSE Linux/SLES 9 and 10, with latest updates and service packs
- VMWare ESX 3i

Refer to your server documentation and to the operating system documentation for more information on hardware and operating system requirements.

## 6.3 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager

---

### 6.3.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software on Microsoft Windows

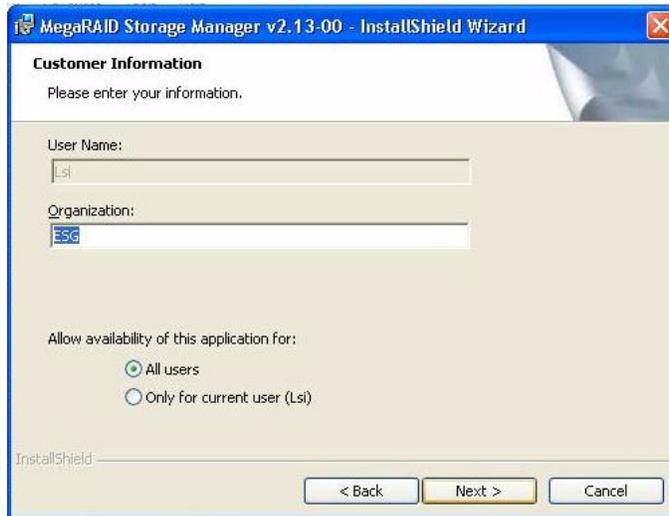
---

This section explains how to install (or reinstall) MegaRAID Storage Manager software on your workstation or server for the supported operating systems: Microsoft Windows, Red Hat Linux, and SUSE Linux.

Follow these steps if you need to install MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows Vista:

1. Insert the MegaRAID Storage Manager software installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.  
If necessary, find and double-click the `setup.exe` file to start the installation program.
2. When the Welcome screen appears, click **Next**.  
If MegaRAID Storage Manager software is already installed on this system, then an upgraded installation occurs.
3. Read the screen text and select **Modify, Repair, or Remove**.
4. When the next screen appears, read and accept the user license, and click **Next**.

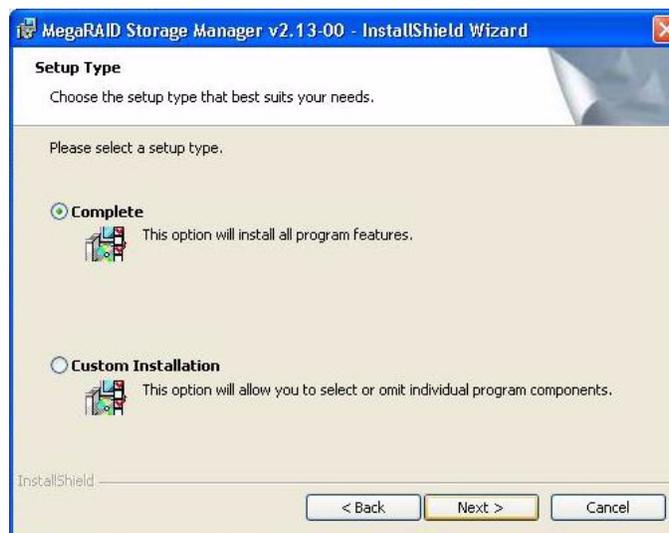
The Customer Information screen appears, as shown in [Figure 72](#).



**Figure 72: Customer Information Screen**

5. Enter your user name and organization name. In the bottom part of the screen, select an installation option:
  - If you select **All users**, any user with administrative privileges can use this version of MegaRAID Storage Manager software to view or change storage configurations.
  - If you select **Only for current user**, the MegaRAID Storage Manager shortcuts and associated icons will be available only to the user with this user name.
6. Click **Next** to continue.
7. On the next screen, accept the default Destination Folder, or click **Change** to select a different destination folder. Click **Next** to continue.

The Setup Type screen appears, as shown in [Figure 73](#).



**Figure 73: Setup Type Screen**

8. Select one of the Setup options. The options are fully explained in the screen text.
  - Normally, you would select **Complete** if you are installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a server.
  - Select **Custom Installation** if you want to select individual program components.
9. Click **Next** to continue.

If you selected **Custom Installation** as your setup option, the second Setup Type screen appears, as shown in [Figure 74](#).

If you select **Complete** as your setup option, the Installation Wizard is ready to install MSM. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.



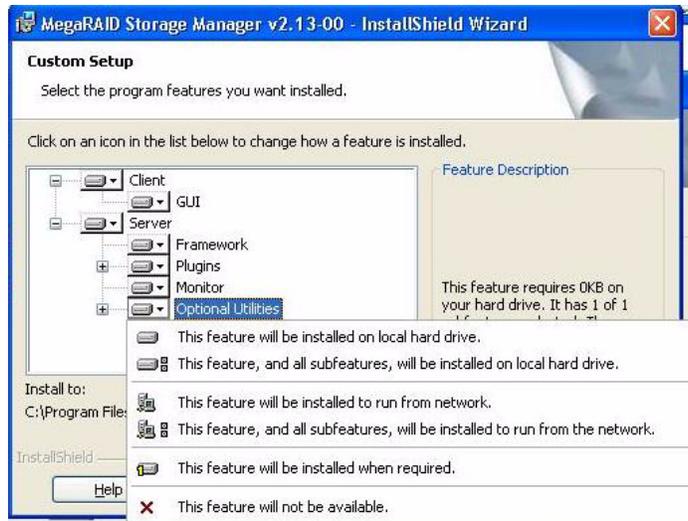
**Figure 74: Setup Type Screen**

10. Select one of the custom setup options. The options are fully explained in the screen text.
  - Select **Client** if you are installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a PC that will be used to view and configure servers over a network. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.

In the Client mode of installation, MSM installs only client-related components, such as MSM GUI, and monitor configurator.

Use this mode when you want to manage and monitor servers remotely. When you install MSM in Client mode on a laptop or a desktop, you can log in to a specific server by providing the IP address.
  - Select **Server** to install only those components required for remote server management. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.
  - Select **StandAlone** if you will use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to create and manage storage configurations on a standalone workstation. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.
  - Select **Custom** if you want to specify individual program features to install.

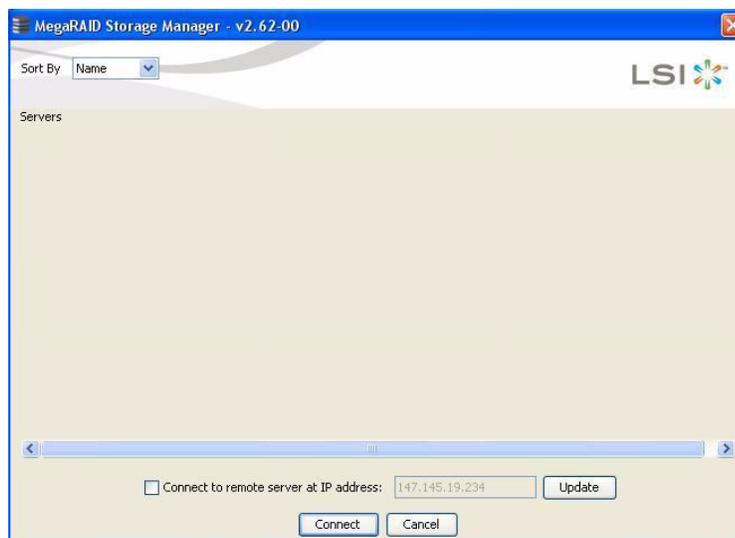
If you select **Custom**, a window listing the installation features appears, as shown in Figure 75. Select the features you want on this screen.



**Figure 75: Custom Setup Screen**

11. Click **Next** to proceed.
12. Click **Install** to install the program.
13. When the final Configuration Wizard screen appears, click **Finish**.

If you select **Client** installation for a PC used to monitor servers, and if there are no available servers with a registered framework on the local subnet (that is, servers with a complete installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager software), the server screen will appear, as shown in Figure 76. The server screen will not list any servers. You can use this screen to manage systems remotely.



**Figure 76: Server Screen**

### 6.3.2 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Linux

Follow these steps if you need to install MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Red Hat Linux or SUSE Linux:

1. Copy the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file to a temporary folder.
2. Untar the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file using the following command:

```
tar -zxvf MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz
```

A new disk directory is created.

3. Go to the new `disk` directory.
4. In the `disk` directory, find and read the `readme.txt` file.
5. To start the installation, enter the following command:

```
cd /disk && ./install.sh -a
```

If you select **Client** installation for a PC used to monitor servers, and if there are no available servers with a registered framework on the local subnet (that is, servers with a complete installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager software), the server screen appears. The server screen does not list any servers. You can use this screen to manage systems remotely.

To install the software using interactive mode, execute the command `./install.sh` from the installation disk.

To install the product in a non-interactive or silent mode, use the command `./install.sh [-options] [-ru popup]` from the installation disk. The installation options are:

- Complete installation
- Client Component Only
- StandAlone

The `-ru popup` command will remove popup from installation list.

You can also run non-interactive installation using the `RunRPM.sh` command.

The installer offers three types of setup options:

- Complete - This installs all the features of the product.
- Client Components Only - The `storelib` feature of the product are not installed in this type of installation. As a result, the resident system can only administer and configure all of the servers in the subnet, but it cannot serve as a server.
- StandAlone - Only the networking feature is not installed in this case, so the resident system is not a part of the network. This means the system cannot browse any other MSM servers in the subnet, and the MSM servers cannot will recognize it as a server.

This installation helps you select any of the setup types, but if you run `RunRPM.sh`, it installs the complete feature.

### 6.3.3 Linux Error Messages

---

The following messages may appear while you are installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a Linux system:

- More than one copy of MegaRAID Storage Manager software has been installed.  
This message indicates that the user has installed more than one copy of MegaRAID Storage Manager software. (This can be done by using the `rpm-force` command to install the `rpm` file directly, which is not recommended, instead of using the `install.sh` file.) In such cases, the user must uninstall all of the `rpm` files manually before installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software with the procedure listed previously.
- The version is already installed.  
This message indicates that the version of MegaRAID Storage Manager software you are trying to install is already installed on the system.
- The installed version is newer.  
This message indicates that a version of MegaRAID Storage Manager software is already installed on the system, and it is a newer version than the version you are trying to install.
- Exiting installation.  
This is the message that appears when the installation is complete.
- RPM installation failed.  
This message indicates that the installation failed for some reason. Additional message text explains the cause of the failure.

## 6.4 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on VMWare

---

### 6.4.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare Classic

---

This section documents the installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager on VMWare Classic (with console operating system) and on the VMWare ESX 3i operating system.

VMWare does not support any graphics components. In order to install MSM on the VMWare operating system, execute the script `./vmware_install.sh` from the installation disk.

The installer lets you accept the License agreement, operating system, and storelib as follows:

- End user license agreement
- Operating system (VMware 3.5 or VMware 4.0)
- Select the Storelib (Inbox Storelib or Storelib from MSM package)

### 6.4.2 Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare

---

To uninstall the Server Component of MSM on VMWare, use the `Uninstall` command in the Program menu or run the script `/usr/local/MegaRAID Storage Manager/uninstaller.sh`.

Note the following points:

- A MSM upgrade is supported in this release. This release can be upgraded by future releases.

### 6.4.3 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Support on the VMWare ESX Operating System

- To shut down the MSM Framework service, run the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/vivaldiframeworkd stop
```

It is recommended that you stop the Monitor service before you stop the MSM Framework service. To stop the Monitor service run the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/mrmonitor stop
```

This section outlines the product requirements needed to support the VMWare ESX operating system. Classic VMWare includes a Service Console that is derived from the Linux 2.4 kernel, but with reduced functionality.

The MSM server part cannot be installed directly in VMWare ESX 3i. Management is possible only through Common Information Model (CIM) providers. These CIM providers integrated into the ESX 3i system build an interface between the hardware driver of the LSI MegaRAID controller and remote applications, such as MSM. Management is performed through MSM installed on a remote machine (Linux/Windows). See [Section 6.4.4.1, VMWare ESX 3i Management through CIM and CMPI](#) for more information.

The Linux installer of MSM works under console with minimal changes. Hardware RAID is currently supported in ESX 3.x.

---

**NOTE:** There is a known limitation that virtual drives that are created or deleted will not be reflected to the kernel. The workaround is to reboot the server or to run `esxcfg-rescan <vmhba#>` from COS shell.

---

The network communication is a key element for a proper setup. The communication between the ESXi CIM provider and the LSI management software is an active/passive combination, which requires a highly reliable network. Therefore, we recommend that you install the management on a VM within the ESXi. Follow these steps to install and configure MSM support on the VMWare ESX operating system:

#### 1. Network Configuration of the ESXi Host:

- Assignment of a ESXi hostname.

Even if it is not relevant for your network, you need a FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name).

Example: local.lsi.com to be entered using the local ESXi console

- Configuration of a virtual network environment:

You can use the already existing Vswitch, which has a VMkernel port already attached for the communication.

Alternatively, you can build a new Vswitch without a link to the Host network card.

Which one of the two possibilities to choose depends on your application. It is recommended to choose between both possibilities at a early stage, because the creation of a new Vswitch with VMkernel requires a reboot to make sure a proper communication between the CIM provider and the new interface. For those who want to reach the target as quickly as possible, no change is recommended.

- Configuration of the IP address:

Configure the IP address. The address must be accessible by the VM that will be installed next.

## 2. VM Installation:

Install the operating system as usual, including the VMWare guest tools. The virtual network card should be linked to a Vswitch that has a VMKernel port attached. For a quick installation, no change is recommended.

## 3. MSM Installation:

Install MSM with the option "complete".

## 4. VM Network Configuration:

- Case 1: Your network contains a DNS server:

Configure a host entry that belongs to your internal zone and make sure that the FQDN of the ESXi server can be resolved. (Example: local.lsi.com and 192.19.221.186)

- Case 2: Your network does not have a DNS server:

Edit your file `C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts` and add another entry:

IP of the ESXi Host	FQDN of the ESXi Host
192.19.221.186	local.lsi.com

## 5. Final Steps:

Reboot the VM and start MegaRAID Storage Manager. The ESXi server should now appear in the list of the found hosts. You can now log in with the root account name and password of the ESXi Host.

### Host Overview:

Figure 77 shows the name of the host ESXi server. In this example, the host ESXi server name is local.lsi.com.

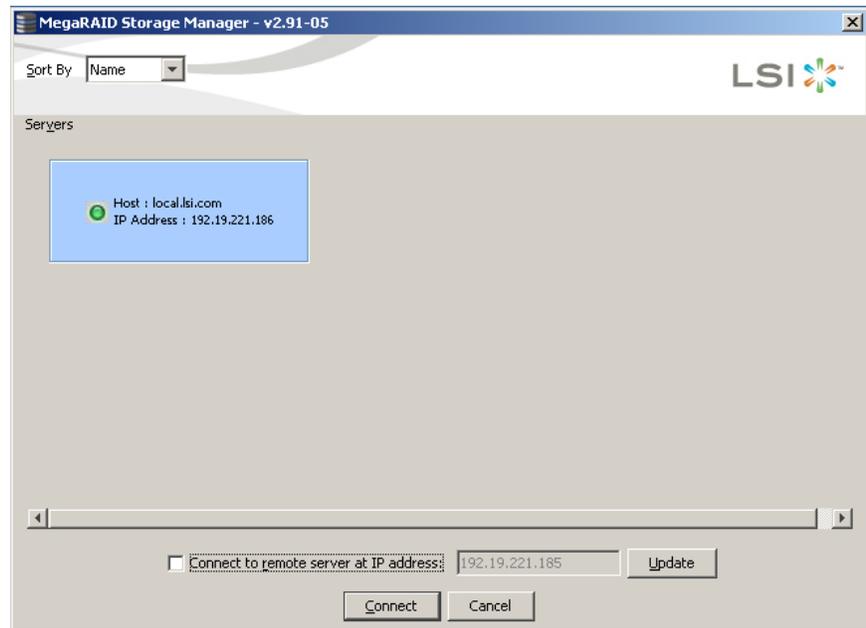


Figure 77: Host ESXi Server Name

You can now enter the user name and password to log in on the ESXi Host, as shown in Figure 78.

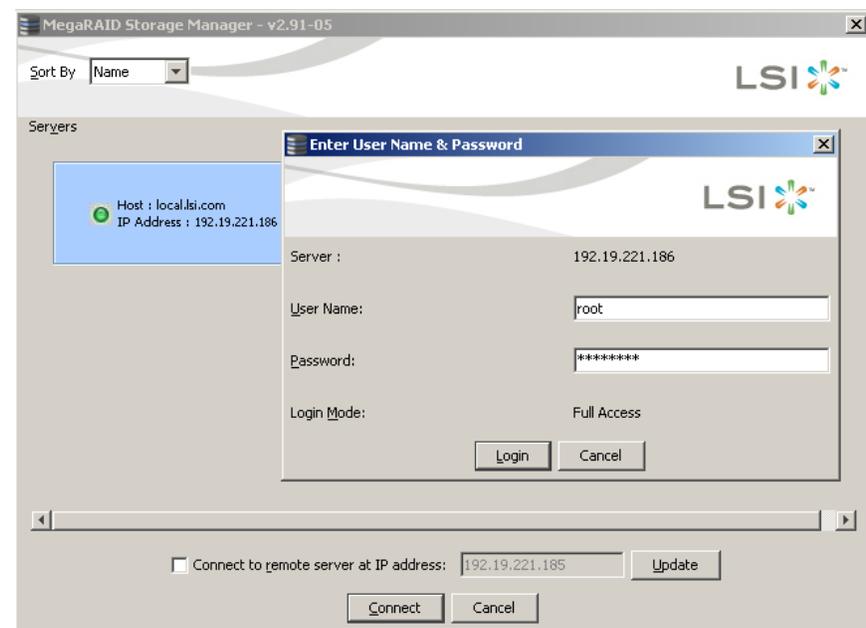
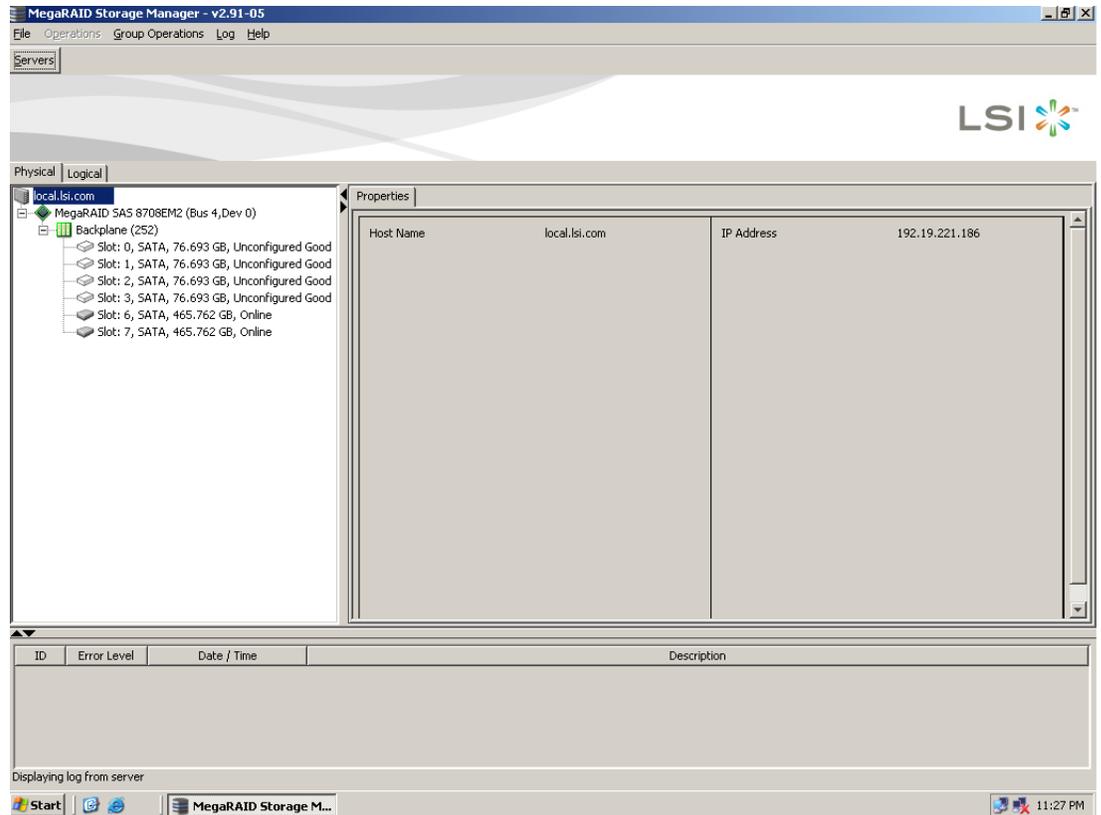


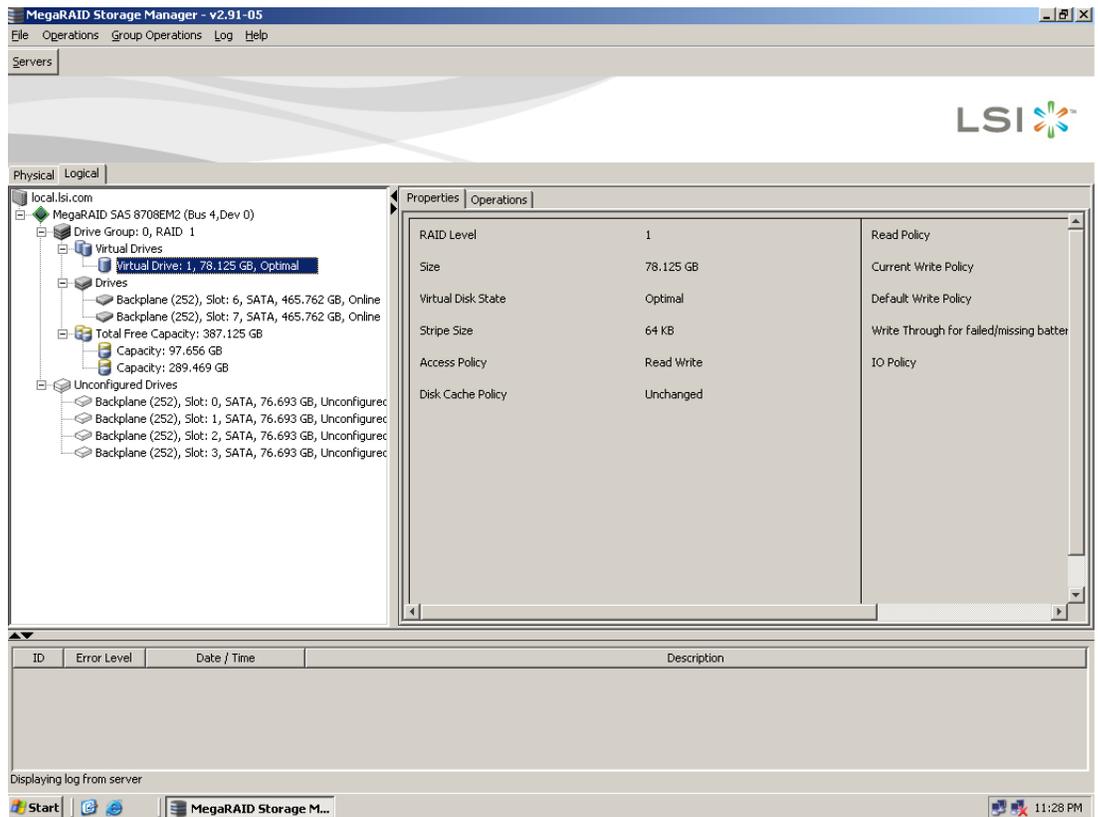
Figure 78: Login on the Host Server

After you log in, you can view the drives connected to the controller (the physical view), as shown in [Figure 79](#).



**Figure 79: Physical View**

Click the Logical tab to view the virtual drives connected to the controller (the logical view), as shown in [Figure 80](#).



**Figure 80: Logical View**

## 6.4.4 Limitations

The following are the limitations of this installation and configuration:

- There is no active event notification, for example, by popup or email
- There is no status information for the controller
- There is no user authentication.
- Events are collected as long as MSM runs on the Client.
- MSM responds more slowly.

For more details on these limitations, see [Section 6.4.4.2, Differences in MSM for VMware ESXi](#).

### 6.4.4.1 VMWare ESX 3i Management through CIM and CMPI

Management of VMWare ESX 3i is possible only through a Common Information Model (CIM) provider. It is not possible to install anything on the VMWare ESX3i system, so management is performed through MSM installed on a remote machine (Linux/Windows).

VMWare ESX 3i comes with the Small Footprint CIM Broker (CFCB) CIM Object Manager (or CIMOM). A CIMOM manages communication between providers, which interact with the hardware, and a CIM client, where the administrator manages the system.

SFCB supports Common Manageability Programming Interface (CMPI)-style providers. CMPI defines a common standard used to interface Manageability Instrumentation (providers, instrumentation) to Management Brokers (CIM Object Manager). CMPI standardizes Manageability Instrumentation, which allows you to write and build instrumentation once and run it in different CIM environments (on one platform).

#### 6.4.4.2 Differences in MSM for VMWare ESXi

The following are some of the differences in the MSM utility when you manage a VMWare server.

- The following limitations apply to the system information exposed through the application:

- Only the IP address and the Host name display.
- The operating system type and the operating system architecture do not appear.
- There is no support for the controller health information.

The following are the MSM screens affected:

- Initial MSM framework (hosts) discovery screen: No health information or operating system type display.
- Server property page: Only the IP address and the Host name display; the operating system type and operating system architecture do not display.

- Authentication support:

- MSM allows CIMOM server authentication with the user ID and the password for VMWare.
- Access control is not supported. There is no support for full view or view only access modes. It is always full view access, and multiple clients can have full view access at the same time on the same server.

- Event Logging:

Full functionality support is available for the VMWare ESXi operating system, but it works differently than the normal MSM framework mode. The event logging feature for MSM Client connected to a VMWare ESXi system behaves as follows:

- There is no support for retrieving initial logs (the events that occurred before a client logs in). Only those events that occur after a client logs in appear in the event logger dialog.
- System log does not display.
- The “Save log” feature is not supported; however, the “Save Log as Text” is still supported.
- The “View Log” option allows you to view the logs saved in a text file on the event logger dialog.
- The event descriptions might not be identical to a normal MSM Client because the descriptions come from the firmware through the provider.
- There is no filtering of events, unlike Monitor Service.
- Refreshing of the MSM GUI after any updates on the firmware is slower for a client connected to VMWare ESXi hosts, compared to one connected to Windows/Linux/Solaris hosts.

- Remote discovery and heartbeat mechanism:
  - For networks that do not have DNS configured, the “hosts” file in the machine on which MSM is installed must be edited as follows:

Add an entry to map the VMWare host’s IP address with the hostname. This is for the discovery to happen correctly. In the absence of this entry, the VMWare host would be discovered as 0.0.0.0.

Add an entry to map its own IP address (not the loop back address) with the Hostname. This is to ensure that the Alert Event Notifications (AENs) are delivered correctly.
  - For networks that has DNS configured, the “hosts” file in the machine on which MSM is installed must be edited as follows:

When you do the initial configurations for the VMWare host, provide the correct DNS server IP address.

In the `hosts` file of the machine on which MSM is installed, add an entry to map its own IP address (not the loop back address) with the Hostname. This is to ensure that the Asynchronous Event Notifications (AENs) are delivered correctly.
- The VMWare hosts are discovered only when the Framework service starts on the host where MSM is installed.
- It takes a while to discover the CIMOM servers. If you start the MSM client immediately after you install MSM (or restart Framework service), you will not be able to discover any hosts in the network.
- The VMWare ESX3i does not support the heartbeat mechanism to let MSM know whether VMWare ESX3i is still connected. When the connection to the remote VMWare ESX3i is lost, MSM does not indicate this. The only option is to rediscover by restarting the MSM framework.
- This is supported only on a full installation of MSM; standalone, client-only, and server-only modes do not support VMWare ESX3i management.
- Supported on following guest operating systems:
  - Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2008
  - Linux RHEL 4 and 5
- The following describes the status of components related to VMWare ESX3i:
  - MSM client GUI is supported.
  - There is no support for Monitor Configurator; you cannot configure the severity of the AENs.
  - There is no pop-up service support.
  - There is no email and system log support.
  - Monitor service support is not available.
- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, you must create the following symbolic links:

---

**NOTE:** This step is not required for MSM version 2.90-02 or later.

---

- `cd /usr/lib` on RHEL 5
- Search for `libcrypto`, `libssl` and `libsfs` libraries as follows:

```
ls -lrt libcrypto*,ls -lrt libssl*,ls -lrt libsfs*
```

- If the files `libcrypto.so.4`, `libssl.so.4`, and `libsysfs.so.1` are missing, manually create sym links as follows:

```
ln -s libcrypto.so libcrypto.so.4
```

```
ln -s libssl.so libssl.so.4
```

```
ln -s libsysfs.so libsysfs.so.1
```

---

**NOTE:** If the `.so` files are not present in the `/usr/lib` directory, create a link with the existing version of the library.

For example, if `libcrypto.so.6` is present and `libcrypto.so` is not, create the link as follows:

```
ln -s libcrypto.so.6 libcrypto.so
```

---

**NOTE:** On a 64-bit operating system, the system libraries will be present in `/usr/lib64` directory by default. However, for supporting CIM Plugin, make sure that the libraries are also present in `/usr/lib` by installing the appropriate RPMs.

---

#### 6.4.5 Running MSM on VMWare ESX 3.5i U2

---

If you are using VMWare ESX 3.5i U2, perform the following steps to make MSM work.

1. Open the maintenance console/shell in ESX3.
  - a. Press ALT+F1.  
A shell without any prompt appears.
  - b. Type `unsupported` (all lowercase) and press ENTER.  
Typed text is not prompted back.
  - c. Enter your password when prompted.  
There is no password by default for the shell. If you have set any password from the "yellow" screen (DCUI), use that password.  
You are prompted (`#`) next.
2. Enable `ssh` for remote copy.
  - a. Type the following command.  
**`vi /etc/inetd.conf`**
  - b. Search for `ssh` in the file.  
By default, the line that contains `ssh` has comments.
  - c. Remove the comment by deleting the symbol `#` in front of the line.
  - d. Save the file and exit.
3. Restart the `inetd` daemon for the changes to take effect.
  - a. Type the following command to get the pid for `inetd`:  
**`ps | grep inetd`**
  - b. Type the following command to kill the `inetd` process:  
**`Kill -9 <inetd pid>`**
  - c. Type the following command to restart the `inetd` daemon:  
**`#inetd`**

4. Type the following command to use scp to copy storelib from a remote machine to the following path.

```
/lib dir scp <user@ip:path to
storelib>/libstorelib.so.2.53 /lib/libstorelib.so
```

5. Restart SFCB and check its status.
  - a. Type the following command to restart SFCB.

```
/etc/init.d/sfcbd restart
```

- b. Type the following command to check the status of SFCB.

```
/etc/init.d/sfcbd status
```

---

**NOTE:** The updated Storelib library in the /lib directory does not persist across reboots. Each time you restart the VMWare host, you have to follow this procedure to replace the Storelib library.

---

## 6.5 Installing and Configuring a CIM Provider

---

This section describes the installation and configuration of the LSI MegaRAID Common Information Model (CIM) provider. The Common Information Model offers common definitions of management information for networks, applications, and services, and allows you to exchange management information across systems throughout a network.

On a VMWare ESX3i system, management is possible only through a CIM provider and it is performed through MSM installed on a remote machine running a Linux or Windows operating system.

VMWare ESX3i comes with the Small Footprint CIM Broker (SFCB) CIM Object Manager (or CIMOM). A CIMOM manages communication between providers, which interact with the hardware, and a CIM client, where the administrator manages the system.

SFCB supports Common Manageability Programming Interface (CMPI)-style providers. CMPI defines a common standard used to interface Manageability Instrumentation (providers, instrumentation) to Management Brokers (CIM Object Manager). CMPI standardizes Manageability Instrumentation, which allows you to write and build instrumentation once and run it in different CIM environments (on one platform).

### 6.5.1 Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Linux

---

The following procedure documents how to install and un-install the LSI CIM SAS Storage Provider on a system running on the Linux operating system.

---

**NOTE:** Uninstall all the previous versions of LsiSASProvider before you install this version. You can check all of the installed versions of LsiSASProvider by using the command `rpm -qa | grep LsiSASProvider`.

---

- Perform the following step to install a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Linux system. Install the SAS Provider using the Red Hat Package Manager (RPM) by entering the following command:

```
rpm -ivh
```

The RPM installs all of the necessary files and the Managed Object Format (MOF), and it registers the libraries. The Provider is now ready to use.

---

**NOTE:** After you install LSI CIM SAS Provider, the MOF file `LSI_SASraid.mof` is available under the `/etc/lsi_cimprov/sas/pegasus/common` directory.

---

- Perform the following step to un- install a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Linux system.

Remove LSI CIM SAS Provider by entering the command:

```
rpm -ivh LsiSASProvider-<version>.<arch>.rpm"
```

This removes all of the necessary files, uninstalls the MOF, and unregisters the libraries. The SAS Provider is no longer on the system.

---

**NOTE:** tog-pegasus binaries, such as `cimmof`, `cimprovider`, and `wbemexec`, should be in PATH variable of `/etc/profile`, and hence, should be defined in all environments of the system.

---

For Pegasus version 2.5.x, perform the following steps:

1. After you install the LSI SAS Pegasus provider, verify that `libLsiSASProvider.so` and `libLsiSASProvider.so.1` are in `/usr/lib/Pegasus/providers` directory.

If these files are not present, copy `libLsiSASProvider.so.1` from `/opt/tog-pegasus/providers/lib` to `/usr/lib/Pegasus/providers` and create a symbolic link `libLsiSASProvider.so` to `/usr/lib/Pegasus/providers/libLsiSASProvider.so.1` at `/usr/bin/Pegasus/providers`.

2. Restart Pegasus CIM Server and LsiServer by performing the following steps:

- To start the tog-pegasus server, execute the following command:

```
# /etc/init.d/tog-pegasus restart
```

- To start LsiSAServer, execute the following command:

```
# /etc/init.d/LsiSASd restart
```

### 6.5.2 Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Windows

---

The following procedure describes how to install and un-install the LSI CIM SAS Storage Provider on a system running on a Windows operating system.

Perform the following steps to install a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Windows system.

1. Go To DISK1.
2. Run `setup.exe`.

The installer installs all of the necessary files and the MOF, and registers the COM dll. The Provider is now ready to use.

Perform the following steps to uninstall a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Windows system.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Add/Remove Program**.
2. Remove the LSI WMI SAS Provider Package.

This step removes all of the necessary files, uninstalls the MOF, and unregisters the COM dll. The SAS Provider is no longer on the system.

## 6.6 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent

---

A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)-based management application can monitor and manage devices through SNMP extension agents. The MegaRAID SNMP subagent reports the information about the RAID controller, virtual drives, physical devices, enclosures, and other items per SNMP request. The SNMP application monitors these devices for issues that might require administrative attention.

This section describes the installation and configuration of the LSI MegaRAID SNMP agent on Linux, Solaris, and Windows operating systems.

### 6.6.1 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Linux

---

This section explains how to install and configure SAS SNMP Agent for the SUSE Linux and Red Hat Linux operating systems.

To do this, perform the following steps.

---

**NOTE:** This procedure requires that you have Net-SNMP agent installed on the Linux machine.

---

---

**NOTE:** The RPM has not been created to support -U version. The RPM -U will probably fail with this RPM.

---

1. Install LSI SAS SNMP Agent using `rpm -ivh <sas rpm>`

---

**NOTE:** After installation, find the SAS MIB file `LSI-AdapterSAS.mib` under the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas` directory.

---

RPM makes the necessary modification needed in the `snmpd.conf` file to run the agent.

---

**NOTE:** Before installation, check whether there is any pass command that starts with 1.3.6.1.4.1.3582 OID in `snmpd.conf`. If so, delete all of the old pass commands that start with 1.3.6.1.4.1.3582 OID. (This situation could occur if an earlier version of LSI SNMP Agent was installed in the system.)

---

The `snmpd.conf` file structure should be the same as `lsi_mrdsnmpd.conf`. For reference, a sample conf file (`lsi_mrdsnmpd.conf`) is in the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp` directory.

2. To run an SNMP query from a remote machine, add the IP address of that machine in the `snmpd.conf` file, as in this example:

```
com2sec      snmpclient      172.28.136.112      public
```

Here, the IP address of the remote machine is 172.28.136.112.

- To receive an SNMP trap to a particular machine, add the IP address of that machine in the `com2sec` section of the `snmpd.conf` file.

For example, to get a trap in 10.0.0.144, add the following to `snmpd.conf`.

```
#           sec.name         source             community
com2sec     snmpclient       10.0.0.144        public
```

- To run/stop the `snmpd` daemon, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/snmpd start/stop
```

- To start/stop the SAS SNMP Agent daemon before issuing a SNMP query, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd start/stop
```

You can check the status of the SAS SNMP Agent daemon by checked by issuing the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd status
```

- Issue an SNMP query in this format:

```
snmpwalk -v1 -c public localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.3582
```

- You can get the SNMP trap from local machine by issuing the following command:

```
snmptrapd -P -F "%02.2h:%02.2j TRAP%w.%q from %A %v\n"
```

---

**NOTE:** To receive a trap in a local machine with Net-SNMP version 5.3, you must modify the `snmptrapd.conf` file (generally located at `/var/net-snmp/snmptrapd.conf`). Add `"disableAuthorization yes"` in `snmptrapd.conf` and then execute `"sudo snmptrapd -P -F "%02.2h:%02.2j TRAP%w.%q from %A %v\n"`.

---



---

**NOTE:** It is assumed that `snmpd.conf` is located at `/etc/snmp` for Red Hat and `/etc` for SLES. You can change the file location from `/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd` file.

---

You can install SNMP without the trap functionality. To do so, set the `"TRAPIND"` environment variable to `"N"` before running RPM.

Before you install a new version, you must uninstall all previous versions.

For SLES 10, perform the following steps to run SNMP:

- Copy `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` to `/etc/snmpd.conf`.
- Modify the `/etc/init.d/snmpd` file and change `SNMPDCONF=/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` entry to `SNMPDCONF=/etc/snmpd.conf`.
- Run **LSI SNMP rpm**.

## 6.6.2 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Solaris

This section explains how to install and configure SAS SNMP Agent for the Solaris operating system.

### 6.6.2.1 Prerequisites

This package requires that you have Solaris System Management Agent installed on the Solaris machine.

### 6.6.2.2 Installation SNMP on Solaris

To install SNMP for Solaris, perform the following procedure:

1. Unzip the LSI SAS SNMP Agent package.
2. Run the install script by executing the following command:

```
# ./install.sh
```

---

**NOTE:** The installation will exit if there are any existing versions of storelib and sassnmp installed on the Solaris machine. Uninstall the existing version by using the following commands:

```
# pkgrm storelib (to uninstall storelib library)
# pkgrm sassnmp (to uninstall LSI SAS SNMP Agent)
```

---

### 6.6.2.3 LSI SAS SNMP MIB Location

After you install the LSI SAS SNMP Agent package, the MIB file LSI-AdapterSAS.mib is installed under /etc/lsi\_mrdsnmp/sas directory.

### 6.6.2.4 Starting, Stopping, and Checking the Status of the LSI SAS SNMP Agent

The following commands are used to start, stop, restart, and check the status of the Solaris System Management Agent (net snmpd) daemon:

- Start: # svcadm enable svc:/application/management/sma:default
- Stop: # svcadm disable svc:/application/management/sma:default
- Restart: # svcadm restart svc:/application/management/sma:default
- Status: # svcs svc:/application/management/sma:default

---

**NOTE: Online** indicates that the SMA is started. **Disabled** indicates that the SMA is stopped.

---

The following commands are used to start, stop, restart, and check the status of the SAS SNMP Agent daemon:

- Start: #/etc/init.d/lsi\_mrdsnmpd start
- Stop: #/etc/init.d/lsi\_mrdsnmpd stop
- Restart: #/etc/init.d/lsi\_mrdsnmpd restart
- Status: #/etc/init.d/lsi\_mrdsnmpd status

### 6.6.2.5 Configuring snmpd.conf

By default, SNMP queries (walk, get) can be executed from any remote machine without any changes to the snmpd.conf file. To quickly add a new community and client access, perform the following steps:

1. Stop the SMA service by executing the following command:

```
# svcadm disable svc:/application/management/sma:default
```

2. Add read-only and read-write community names.

- a. Add a read-only community name and client/hostname/ipaddress under "SECTION: Access Control Setup" in the /etc/sma/snmp/snmpd.conf file, as shown in the following excerpt:

```
#####
# SECTION: Access Control Setup
# This section defines who is allowed to talk to your
# running SNMP Agent.
# rocommunity: a SNMPv1/SNMPv2c read-only access
# community name
# arguments: community
# [default|hostname|network/bits] [oid]
# rocommunity snmpclient 172.28.157.149
#####
```

- b. Add a readwrite community name and client/hostname/ipaddress under "SECTION: Access Control Setup" in `/etc/sma/snmp/snmpd.conf` file, as shown in the following excerpt:

```
#####
# SECTION: Access Control Setup
# This section defines who is allowed to talk to your
# running
# snmp agent.
# rocommunity: a SNMPv1/SNMPv2c read-only access
# community name
# arguments: community
# [default|hostname|network/bits] [oid]
# rwcommunity snmpclient 172.28.157.149
#####
```

3. Start the SMA service by using the following command:

```
# svcadm enable svc:/application/management/sma:default
```

---

**NOTE:** Refer to the command `man snmpd.conf` for more information about configuring the `snmpd.conf` file.

---

### 6.6.2.6 Configuring SNMP Traps

To receive SNMP traps, perform the following steps:

1. Stop the LSI SAS SNMP Agent by using the following command:

```
#!/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd stop
```

2. Edit the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas/sas_TrapDestination.conf` file and add the ipaddress as shown in the following excerpt:

```
#####
# Agent Service needs the IP addresses to sent trap
# The trap destination may be specified in this file
# or using snmpd.conf file. Following indicators can
# be set on "TrapDestInd" to instruct the agent to
# pick the IPs as the destination.
# 1 - IPs only from snmpd.conf
# 2 - IPs from this file only
# 3 - IPs from both the files
#####
TrapDestInd 2
#####Trap Destination IP#####
127.0.0.1 public
172.28.157.149 public
#####
```

3. Start the LSI SAS SNMP Agent by entering the following command:

```
#/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd start
```

The `uninstall.sh` script is located under the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas` directory. Use the following command to uninstall the package:

```
# cd /etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas
# ./uninstall.sh
```

This section explains how to install and configure SAS SNMP Agent for the Windows operating system.

### 6.6.3 Installing an SNMP Agent on Windows

#### 6.6.3.1 Installing SNMP Agent

Perform the following steps to install SNMP Agent:

1. Run `setup.exe` from DISK1.
2. Use SNMP Manager to retrieve the SAS data (it is assumed that you have compiled LSI-AdapterSAS.mib file already).

The LSI-AdapterSAS.mib file is available under `%ProgramFiles%\LSI Corporation\SNMPAgent\SAS` directory.

3. Use a trap utility to get the traps.

---

**NOTE:** Before you install the Agent, make sure that SNMP Service is already installed in the system.

---

#### 6.6.3.2 Installing SNMP Service for Windows

If you do not have SNMP Service installed on your system, perform the following steps to install SNMP Service for a Windows system:

1. Select **Add/Remove Programs** from Control Panel.
2. Select **Add/Remove Windows Components** in the left side of the **Add/Remove Programs** window.
3. Select **Management and Monitoring Tools**.
4. Click **Next** and follow any prompts to complete the installation procedure.

### 6.6.3.3 Configuring SNMP Service on the Server Side

Perform the following steps to configure SNMP Service on the server side.

1. Select **Administrative Tools** from Control Panel.
2. Select **Services** from the Administrative Tools window.
3. Select **SNMP Service** in the Services window.
4. Open **SNMP Service**.
5. Click the **Security** tab and make sure that `Accept SNMP Packets from any host` is selected.
6. Click the **Traps** tab and select the list of host IPs to which you want the traps to be sent with the community name.

## 6.7 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on Solaris 10

---

### 6.7.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10

---

Follow these steps to install MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Solaris 10, update 5:

1. Copy the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file to a temporary folder.
2. Untar the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file using the following command:

```
tar -zxvf MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz
```

This step creates a new disk directory.

3. Go to the new disk directory, and find and read the `readme.txt` file.
4. Enter the Bash shell.
5. Execute the command `./install.sh` present in the disk directory.
6. When prompted by the installation scripts, select `Y` to complete the installation.

### 6.7.2 Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10

---

Follow these steps to uninstall MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Solaris 10, update 5:

1. Execute the `Uninstaller.sh` file located in `/opt/MegaRaidStorageManager` directory.
2. When prompted by the uninstallation scripts, select `Y` to complete the installation.

---

**NOTE:** To shut down MSM Framework service, run `svcadm disable -t MSMFramework`. It is advisable to stop Monitor service before stopping MSM Framework service. To stop Monitor service, run `svcadm disable -t MSMMonitor`.

---



---

**NOTE:** To start the Framework service, run `svcadm enable MSMFramework`. To start the monitor service run `svcadm enable MSMMonitor`.

---



---

**NOTE:** To check the status of MSM services execute the command `svcs -a | grep -i msm`.

---



# Chapter 7

## MegaRAID Storage Manager Window and Menus

This chapter explains how to start MegaRAID Storage Manager software and describes the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and menus.

### 7.1 Starting MegaRAID Storage Manager Software

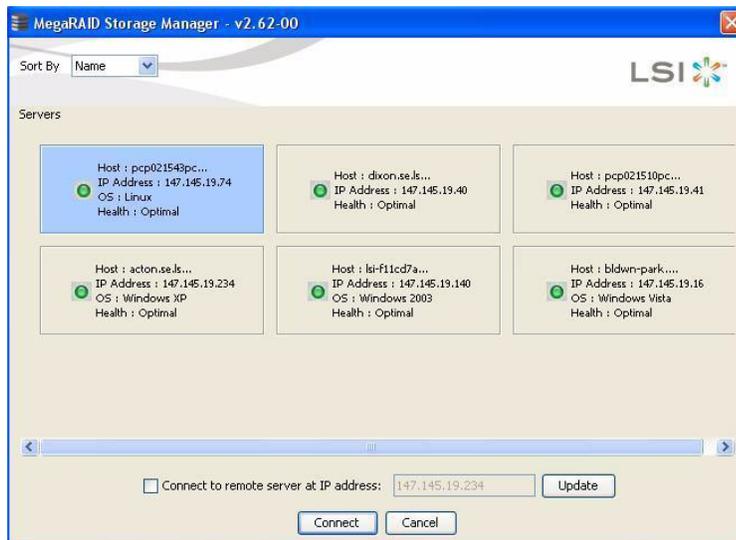
Follow these steps to start MegaRAID Storage Manager software and view the main window:

1. Start the program using the method required for your operating system environment:
  - To start MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a Microsoft Windows system, select **Start->Programs->MegaRAID Storage Manager->StartupUI**, or double-click the MegaRAID Storage Manager shortcut on the desktop.

**NOTE:** If a warning appears stating that Windows Firewall has blocked some features of the program, click **Unblock** to allow MegaRAID Storage Manager software to start. (The Windows Firewall sometimes blocks the operation of programs that use Java.)

- To start MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a Red Hat Linux system, select **Applications->System Tools->MegaRAID Storage Manager StartupUI**.
- To start MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a SUSE Linux/SLES system, select **Start->System->More Programs ->MegaRAID Storage Manager**.

2. When the program starts, the Select Server window appears, as shown in Figure 81.



**Figure 81: Select Server Window**

If the circle in the server icon is orange instead of green, it means that the server is running in a degraded state—for example, because a drive used in a virtual drive has failed. If the circle is red, the storage configuration in the server has failed.

---

**NOTE:** To access servers on a different subnet, type in the box at the bottom of the screen the IP address of a server in the desired subnet where the MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, and click **Update**. If you check the **Connect to remote server at: IP** address box, you can also access a standalone (remote) installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager software, if it has a network connection.

---

---

**NOTE:** For the VMWare CIMOM, the server button does not denote the health of the server. The button is always green regardless of the health of the system.

---

---

**NOTE:** The VMWare server does not show the system health and the operating system labels. It shows only the Hostname and the IP address of the server.

---

---

**NOTE:** When connecting to a VMWare server on a different subnet, one or more Frameworks have to be running in the subnet in order to connect to the CIMOM.

---

3. Double-click the icon of the server that you want to access. The Server Login window appears, as shown in [Figure 82](#).

**Figure 82: Server Login Window**

4. Select an access mode from the drop-down menu.
  - Select **Full Access** if you need to both view the current configuration and change the configuration.
  - Select **View Only** if you need to only view and monitor the configuration.

---

**NOTE:** When connected to VMWare system, the Server Login screen shows only one label for access. "Full Access". Multiple users can have full access to the VMWare server.

---

5. Enter your user name and password, and click **Login**.

---

**NOTE:** If the computer is networked, this is the login to the computer itself, not the network login.

---

Enter the root/administrator user name and password to use Full Access mode.

---

**NOTE:** In Linux, users belonging to the root group can log in. You do not have to be the user "root".

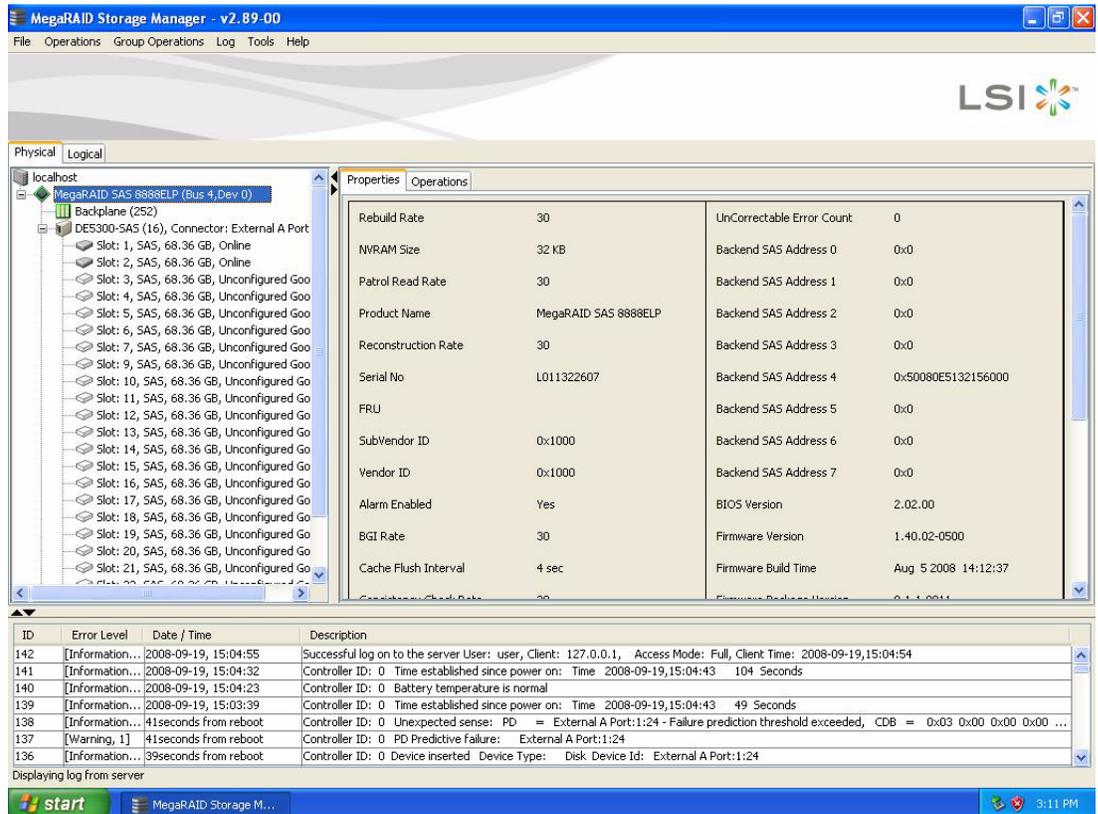
---

If your user name and password are correct for the Login mode you have chosen, the main MegaRAID Storage Manager window appears.

## 7.2 MegaRAID Storage Manager Window

---

This section describes the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, which is shown in [Figure 83](#).



**Figure 83: Main MegaRAID Storage Manager Window**

The following topics describe the panels and menu options that appear on this screen.

### 7.2.1 Physical/Logical View Panel

The left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window displays either the *Physical* view or the *Logical* view of the system and the devices in it, depending on which tab is selected.

- The *Physical* view shows the hierarchy of physical devices in the system. At the top of the hierarchy is the system itself. One or more controllers are installed in the system. The controller label identifies the MegaRAID controller, such as the MegaRAID SAS 8708ELP controller, so that you can easily differentiate between multiple controllers. Each controller has one or more ports. Drives and other devices are attached to the ports.
- The *Logical* view shows the hierarchy of controllers, virtual drives, and drive groups that are defined on the system. (Drives also appear in the *Logical* view, so you can see which drives are used by each virtual drive.)

The following icons in the left panel represent the controllers, drives, and other devices:

	System
	Controller
	Backplan
	Enclosure
	Port
	Drive group
	Virtual drive
	Slot
	Dedicated hot spare
	Global hot spare
	Battery backup unit (BBU)
	Tape drive
	CD-ROM

**NOTE:** MegaRAID Storage Manager shows the icons for tape drive devices; however, no tape-related operations are supported by the utility. If these operations are required, use a separate backup application.

A red circle to the right of an icon indicates that the device has failed. For example, this icon indicates that a drive has failed: .

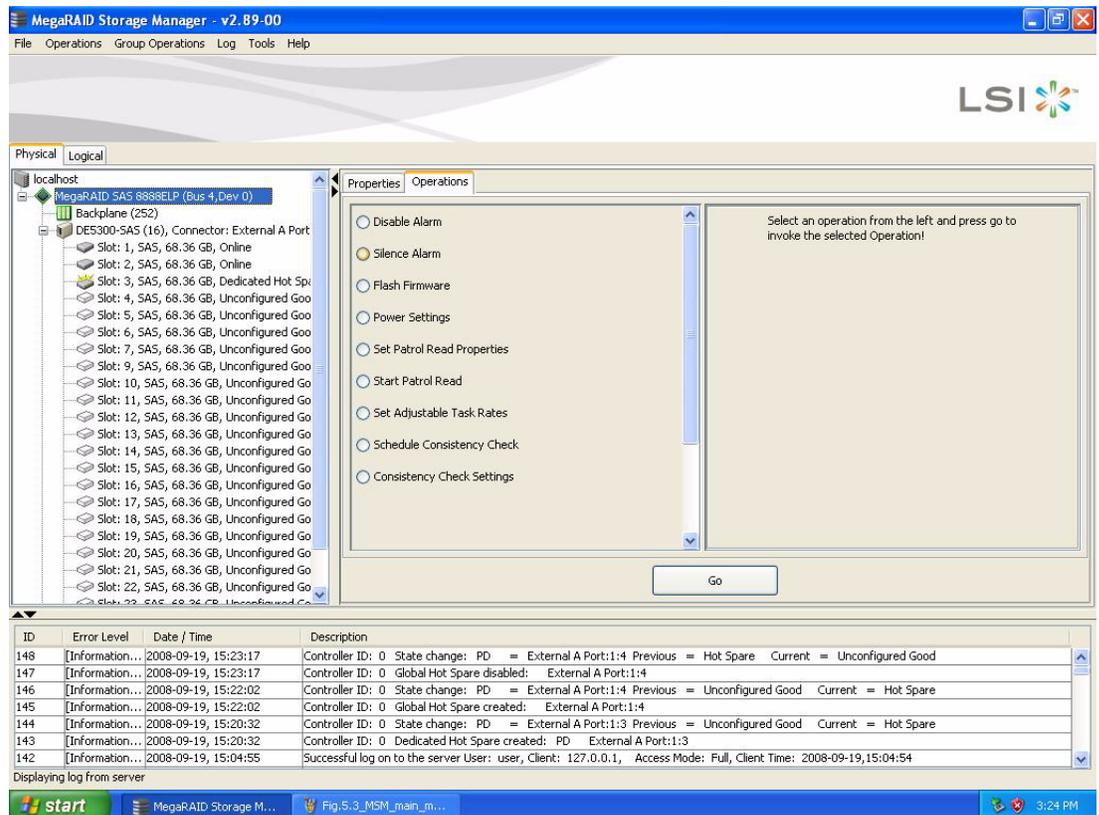
A yellow circle to the right of an icon indicates that a device is running in a partially degraded state. For example, this icon indicates that a virtual drive is running in a degraded state because a drive has failed: .

## 7.2.2 Properties/Operations Panels

The right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window has either two tabs or three tabs, depending on which kind of device you select in the left panel.

- The *Properties* tab displays information about the selected device. For example, if you select a controller icon in the left panel, the Properties tab lists information about the controller, such as the controller name, NVRAM size, and device port count. For more information, see [Section 9.3, Monitoring Controllers](#), [Section 9.4, Monitoring Drives](#) and [Section 9.6, Monitoring Virtual Drives](#)

- The *Operations* tab lists the operations that can be performed on the device that you select in the left panel. For example, [Figure 84](#) shows the options that are available when you select a controller. These include enabling or silencing the alarm and running a Patrol Read. Some types of devices, such as drive groups and ports, do not have operations associated with them. For more information, see [Chapter 7, MegaRAID Storage Manager Window and Menus](#)



**Figure 84: Operations Tab**

### 7.2.3 Event Log Panel

The lower part of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window displays the system event log entries, as shown in [Figure 83](#). New event log entries appear during the session. Each entry has an ID, an error level indicating the severity of the event, the timestamp and date, and a brief description of the event.

For more information about the event log, see [Section 9.1, Monitoring System Events](#) For more information about the event log entries, see [Appendix A, Events and Messages](#)

### 7.2.4 Menu Bar

Here are brief descriptions of the main selections on the MegaRAID Storage Manager menu bar. Specific menu options are described in more detail in [Chapter 8, Chapter 9, and Chapter 10](#) of this manual.

#### 7.2.4.1 File Menu

The File menu has an Exit option for exiting from the MegaRAID Storage Manager software. It also has a Rescan option for updating the display in the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. (Rescan is seldom required; the display normally updates automatically.)

#### 7.2.4.2 Operations Menu

The Operations menu is available when a controller, drive, virtual drive, or battery backup unit is selected in the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. The Operations menu options vary depending on the type of device selected in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. For example, the Scan for Foreign Config option is available only when a controller is selected. The options also vary depending on the current state of the selected device. For example, if you select an offline drive, the Make Drive Online option appears in the Operations menu.

You can view the Operations selections on the main window on the Operations tab in the right panel. If an operation requires user inputs before it can be executed, it appears in the Operations tab but not in the Operations menu. A device-specific Operations menu pops up if you right-click a device icon in the left panel.

Configuration options are also available. This is where you access the Configuration Wizard and other configuration-related commands.

To access the other configuration commands, select the controller in the left panel, and then select **Operations-> Configuration**.

#### 7.2.4.3 Group Operations Menu

The Group Operations menu options include Check Consistency, Show Progress, and Initialize.

#### 7.2.4.4 Tools Menu

On the Tools menu you can select **Tools->Configure->Configure Alerts** to access the Event Configuration Notification screen, which you can use to set the alert delivery rules, event severity levels, exceptions, and email settings. For more information, see [Section 9.2, Configuring Alert Notifications](#)

#### 7.2.4.5 Log Menu

The Log menu includes options for saving and clearing the message log. For more information, see [Appendix A, Events and Messages](#)

#### 7.2.4.6 Help Menu

On the Help menu you can select **Help->Help** to view the MegaRAID Storage Manager online help file. You can select **Help->About** to view version information for the MegaRAID Storage Manager software.

---

**NOTE:** When you use the MegaRAID Storage Manager online help, you may see a warning message that Internet Explorer has restricted the file from showing active content. If this warning appears, click on the active content warning bar and enable the active content.

---

---

**NOTE:** If you are using the Linux operating system, you must install Firefox<sup>®</sup> or Mozilla<sup>®</sup> for the MegaRAID Storage Manager online help to display.

---

---

**NOTE:** When connected to the VMWare server, only the IP address and the hostname information display. The other information, such as the operating system name, version, and architecture do not display.

---



# Chapter 8

## Configuration

This chapter explains how to use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to create and modify storage configurations on LSI SAS controllers.

The LSI SAS controllers support RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 storage configurations. To learn more about RAID and RAID levels, see [Chapter 2, Introduction to RAID](#).

The Modify Drive Group Wizard allows you to easily change RAID levels or to expand the capacity of existing virtual drives.

**NOTE:** You cannot create or modify a storage configuration unless you are logged on to a server with administrator privileges.

### 8.1 Creating a New Storage Configuration

You can use the MegaRAID Storage Manager to create new storage configurations on systems with LSI SAS controllers. You can create the following types of configurations:

- **Simple configuration** specifies a limited number of settings and has the system select drives for you. This option is the easiest way to create a virtual drive.
- **Advanced configuration** lets you choose additional settings and customize virtual drive creation. This option provides greater flexibility when creating virtual drives for your specific requirements.

This section describes the virtual drive parameters and explain how to create simple and advanced storage configurations.

#### 8.1.1 Selecting Virtual Drive Settings

This section describes the virtual drive settings that you can select when you use the advanced configuration procedure to create virtual drives. You should change these parameters only if you have a specific reason for doing so. It is usually best to leave them at their default settings.

- **Initialization state:** Initialization prepares the storage medium for use. Specify the initialization status:
  - *No Initialization:* (the default) The new configuration is not initialized and the existing data on the drives is not overwritten.
  - *Fast Initialization:* The firmware quickly writes zeroes to the first and last 8-Mbyte regions of the new virtual drive and then completes the initialization in the background.  
This allows you to start writing data to the virtual drive immediately.
  - *Full Initialization:* A complete initialization is done on the new configuration. You cannot write data to the new virtual drive until the initialization is complete. This can take a long time if the drives are large.

- **Stripe size:** Stripe sizes of 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes are supported. The default is 64 Kbytes. For more information, see the *striping* Glossary entry.
- **Read policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - *Always read ahead:* Read ahead capability allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - *No read ahead:* (the default) Disables the read ahead capability.
  - *Adaptive read ahead:* When selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *No read ahead*.
- **Write policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - *Write back:* In this mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction.
  - *Write through:* (the default) In this mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.

---

**NOTE:** The Write Policy depends on the status of the battery backup unit (BBU). If the BBU is not present, is bad, or is being charged, the default Write Policy will be Write through. This provides better data protection.

---

- **I/O policy:** The IO policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
  - *Cached IO:* In this mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - *Direct IO:* (the default) In this mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory.  
Cached IO provides faster processing, and Direct IO ensures that the cache and the host contain the same data.
- **Access policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive.
  - *Read/Write:* (the default) Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - *Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - *Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Disk cache policy:** Select a cache setting for this drive:
  - *Enable:* Enable the disk cache.
  - *Disable:* Disable the disk cache.
  - *Unchanged:* (the default) Leave the current disk cache policy unchanged.

### 8.1.2 Creating a Virtual Drive Using Simple Configuration

---

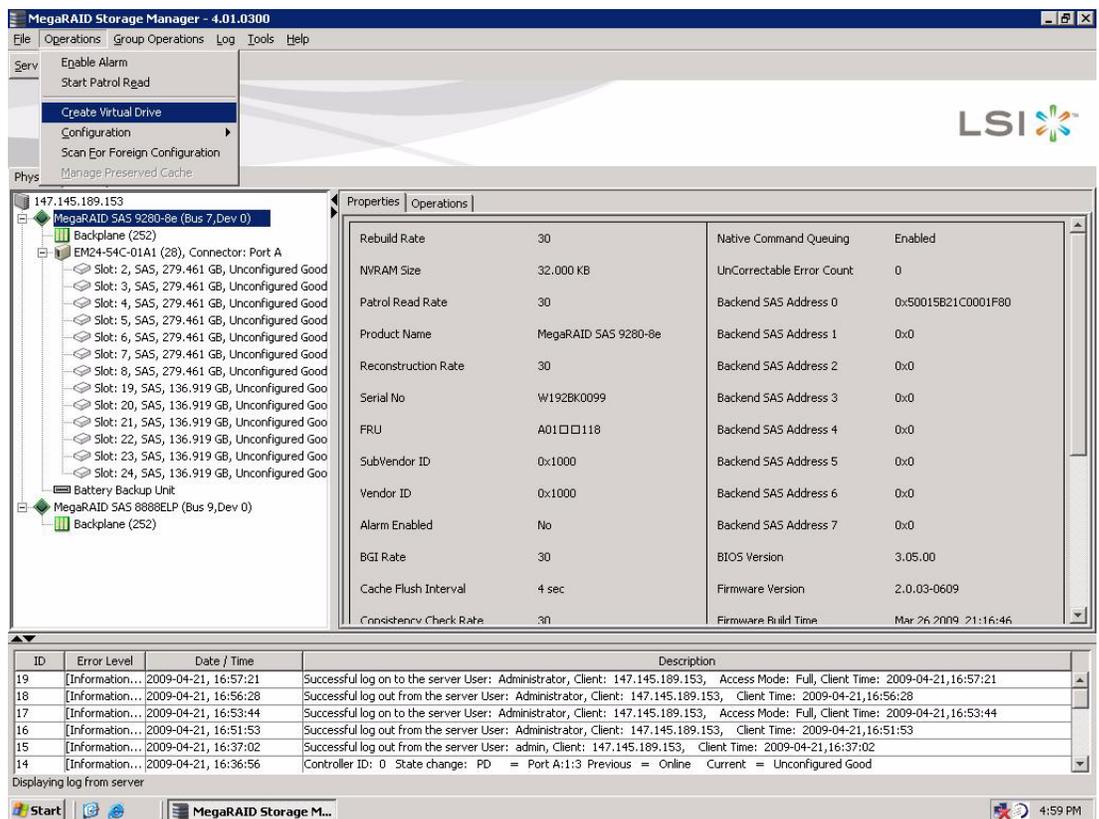
Simple configuration is the quickest and easiest way to create a new storage configuration. When you select simple configuration mode, the system creates the best configuration possible using the available drives.

**NOTE:** You cannot create spanned drives using the simple configuration procedure. To create spanned drives, use the advanced configuration procedure described in [Section 8.1.3, Creating a Virtual Drive Using Advanced Configuration](#).

Follow these steps to create a new storage configuration in simple configuration mode.

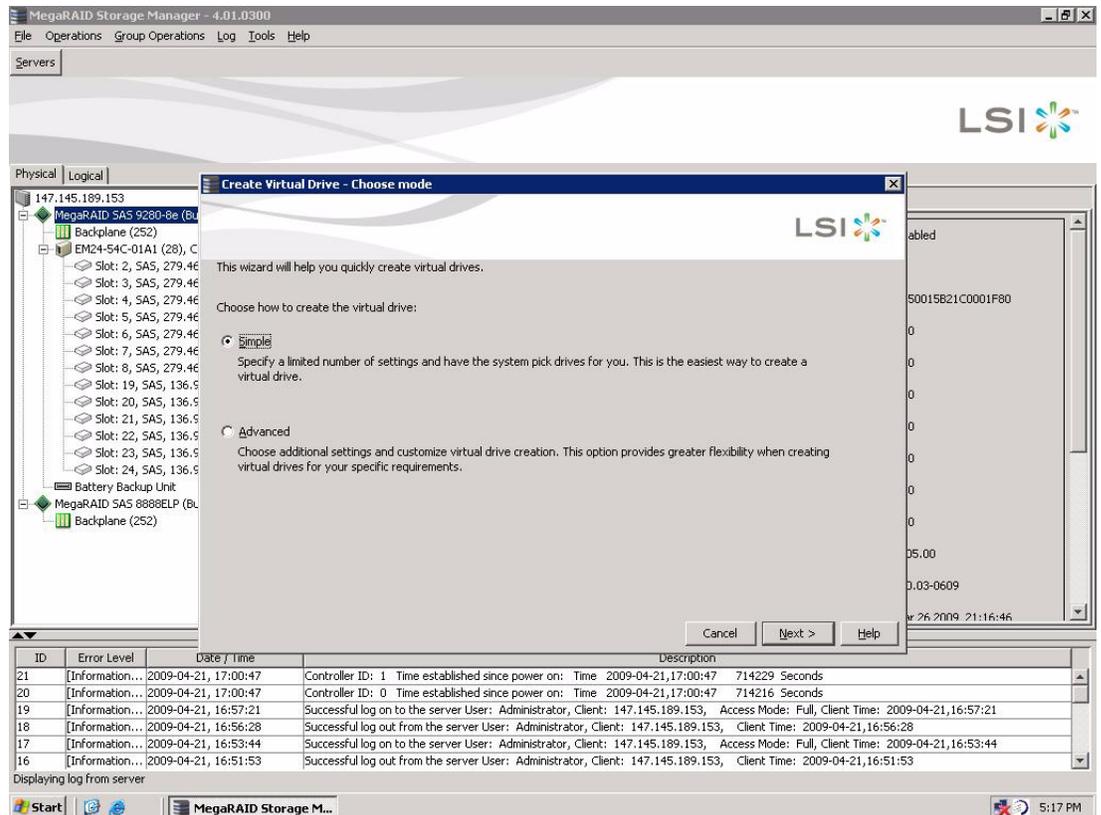
1. Perform either of the following steps:

- Right-click the controller node in the device tree in the left frame of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and select **Create Virtual Drive**
- Select the controller node and select **Operations->Create Virtual Drive** in the menu bar, as shown in [Figure 85](#).



**Figure 85: Virtual Drive Creation Menu**

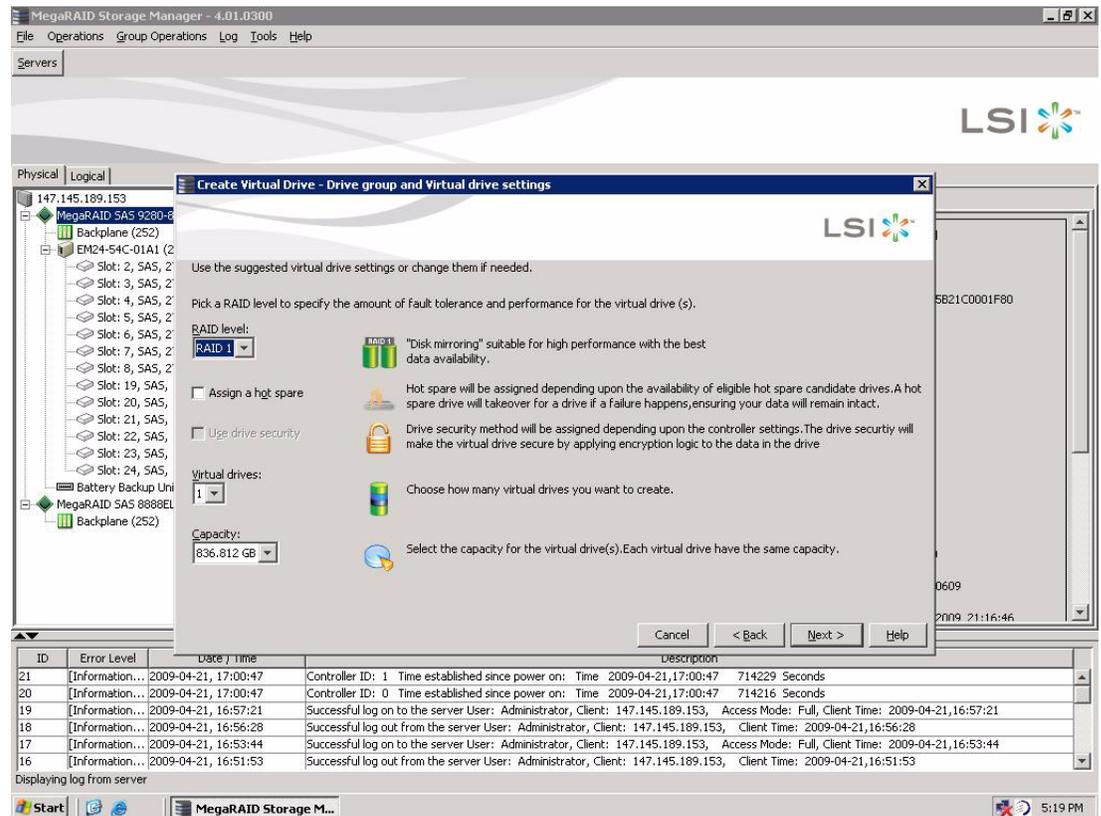
The dialog box for the configuration mode (simple or advanced) appears, as shown in [Figure 86](#).



**Figure 86: Virtual Drive Creation Mode**

2. Click **Simple** and press **Next**.

The Create Virtual Drive screen appears, as shown in [Figure 87](#).



**Figure 87: Create Virtual Drive Screen**

3. Select the RAID level desired for the virtual drive.

When you use simple configuration, the RAID controller supports RAID levels 1, 5, and 6. In addition, it supports independent drives (configured as RAID 0). The screen text gives a brief description of the RAID level that you select. The RAID levels that you can choose depend on the number of drives available. To learn more about RAID levels, see [Chapter 2, Introduction to RAID](#).

4. Click the box next to **Assign a hot spare** if you want to assign a hot spare drive to the virtual drive.

Hot spares are drives that are available to replace failed drives automatically in a redundant virtual drive (RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6).

5. Click the box next to the text **Use drive security** if you want to set a drive security method.

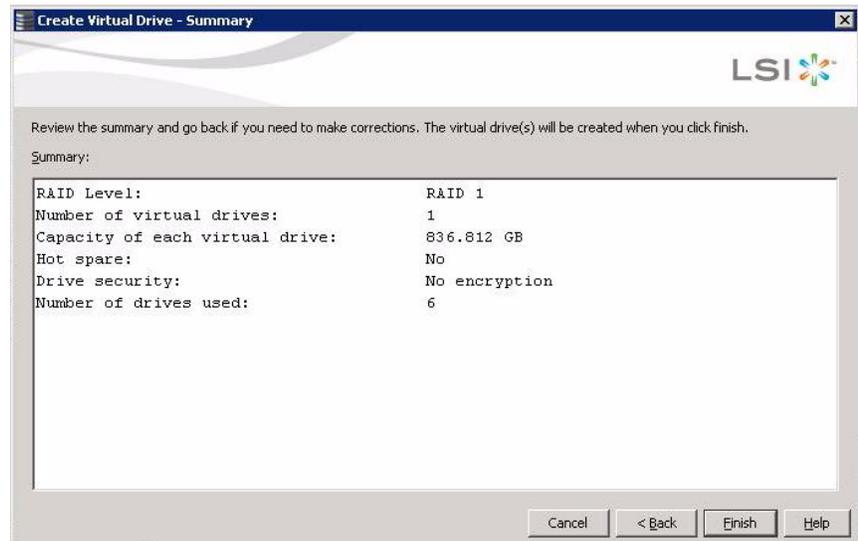
The Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature provides the ability to encrypt data and use disk-based key management for your data security solution. This solution provides protection to the data in the event of theft or loss of drives.

6. Select the number of virtual drives that you want to create.
7. Select the capacity for the virtual drives.

Each virtual drive has the same capacity.

8. Click **Next**.

The **Create Virtual Drive - Summary** window appears, as shown in [Figure 88](#). This window shows the selections you made for simple configuration.



**Figure 88: Create Virtual Drive - Summary Window**

9. Click **Back** to return to the previous screen to change any selections or click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

The new storage configuration will be created and initialized.

---

**NOTE:** If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar appears as the drives spin up.

If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

---

After the configuration is completed, a dialog box notifies you that the virtual drives were created successfully.

### 8.1.3 Creating a Virtual Drive Using Advanced Configuration

---

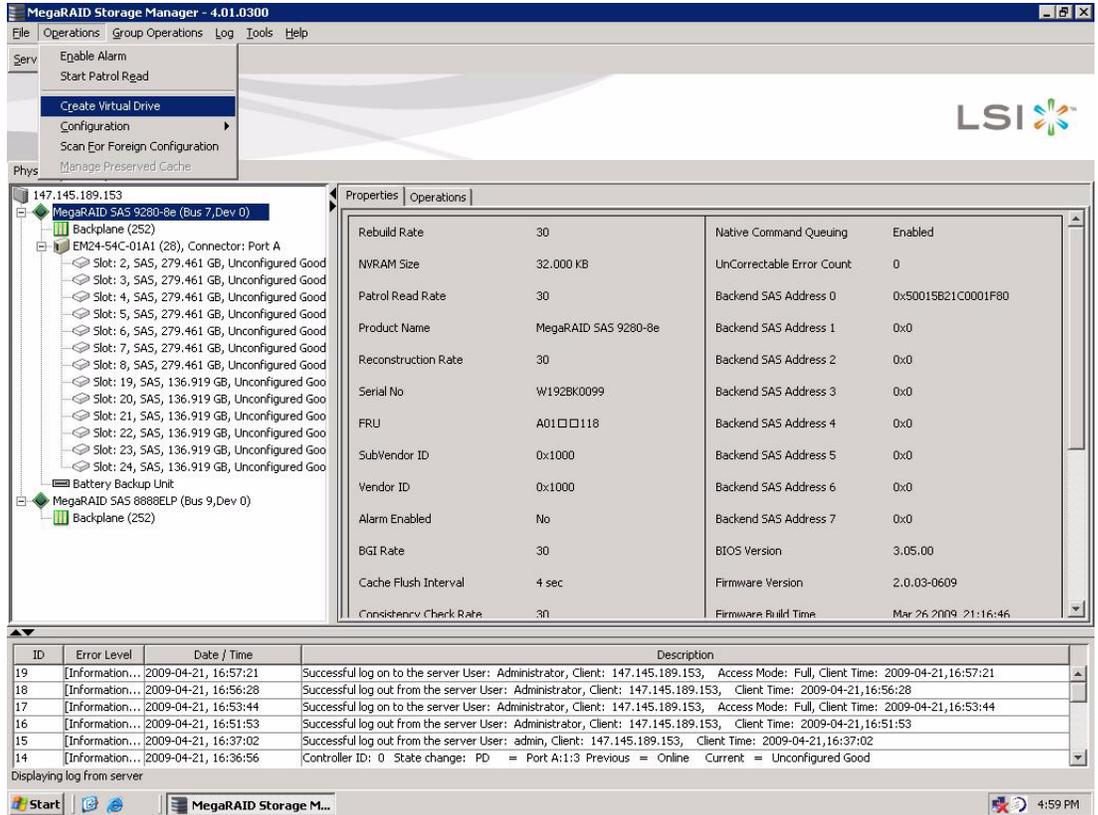
The advanced configuration procedure provides an easy way to create a new storage configuration. Advanced configuration gives you greater flexibility than simple configuration because you can select the drives and the virtual drive parameters when you create a virtual drive. In addition, you can use the advanced configuration procedure to create spanned drive groups.

Follow these steps to create a new storage configuration in the advanced configuration mode. This example shows the configuration of a spanned drive group.

Perform either of the following steps:

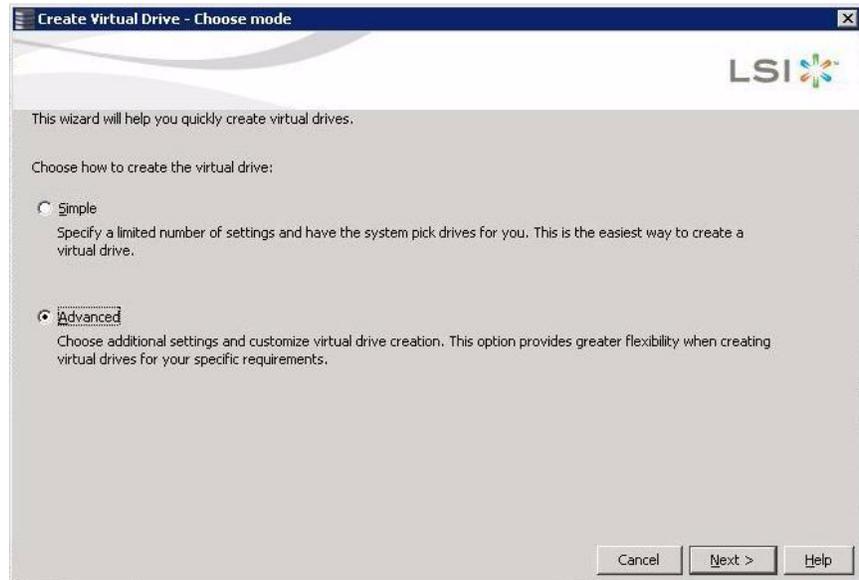
- Right click on the controller node in the device tree in the left frame of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and select **Create Virtual Drive**

- Select the controller node and select **Operations->Create Virtual Drive** in the menu bar, as shown in [Figure 89](#)



**Figure 89: Virtual Drive Creation Menu**

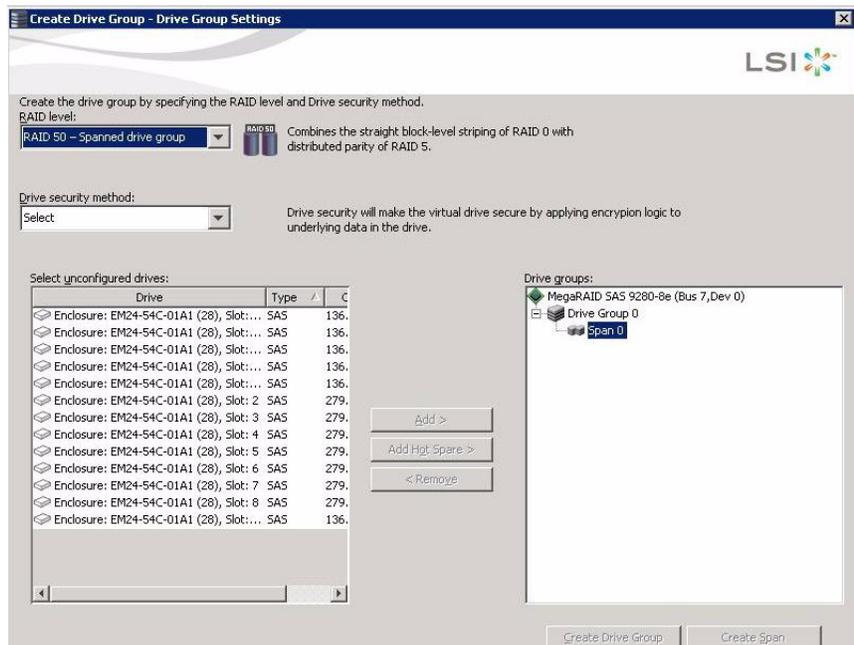
The dialog box shown in [Figure 90](#) appears.



**Figure 90: Virtual Drive Creation Mode**

10. Click **Advanced** and press **Next**.

The Create Drive Group Settings screen appears, as shown in [Figure 91](#).



**Figure 91: Create Drive Group Settings Screen**

11. Select the following items on the Create Drive Group Settings screen:

- a. Select the RAID level desired for the drive group from the drop-down menu. To make a spanned drive, select **RAID 10**, **RAID 50**, or **RAID 60** in the **RAID level** field.

**Drive Group 0** and **Span 0** appear in the **Drive groups** field when you select RAID 10, 50, or 60.

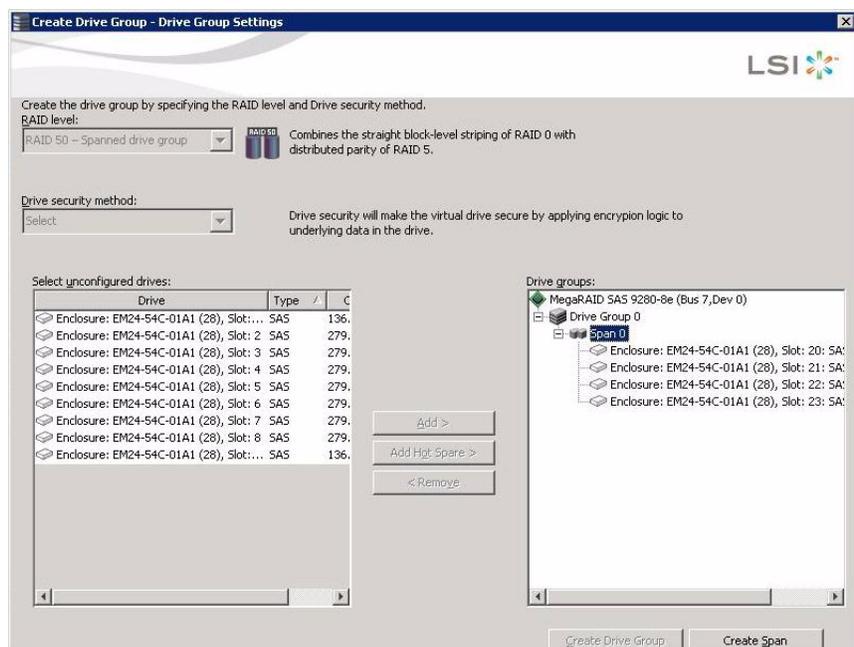
The RAID controller supports RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. In addition, it supports independent drives (configured as RAID 0 and RAID 00). The screen text gives a brief description of the RAID level you select. RAID levels you can choose depend on the number of drives available. To learn more about RAID levels, see [Chapter 2, Introduction to RAID](#).

- b. Scroll down the menu for the **Drive security method** field if you want to set a drive security method.

The FDE feature provides the ability to encrypt data and use disk-based key management for your data security solution. This solution provides protection to the data in the event of theft or loss of drives.

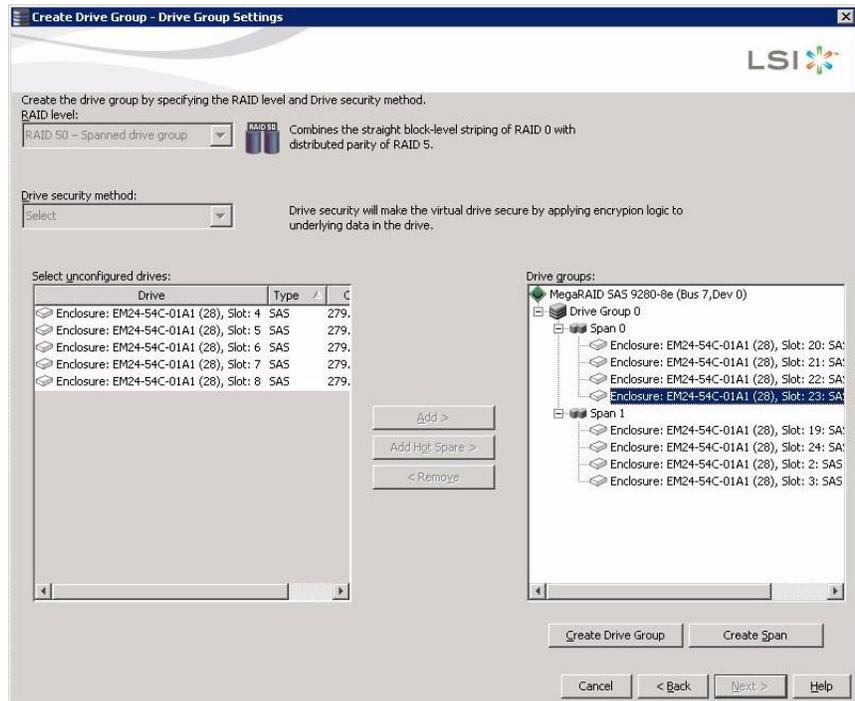
- c. Select *unconfigured* drives from the list of drives and click **Add>** to add them to the drive group.

The selected drives appear under **Span 0** below **Drive Group 0**, as shown in [Figure 92](#).



**Figure 92: Span 0 of Drive Group 0**

- d. Click **Create Span** to create a second span in the drive group.
- e. Select *unconfigured* drives from the list of drives and click **Add>** to add them to the drive group.
- f. The selected drives appear under **Span 1** below **Drive Group 0**, as shown in [Figure 93](#).



**Figure 93: Span 0 and Span 1 of Drive Group 0**

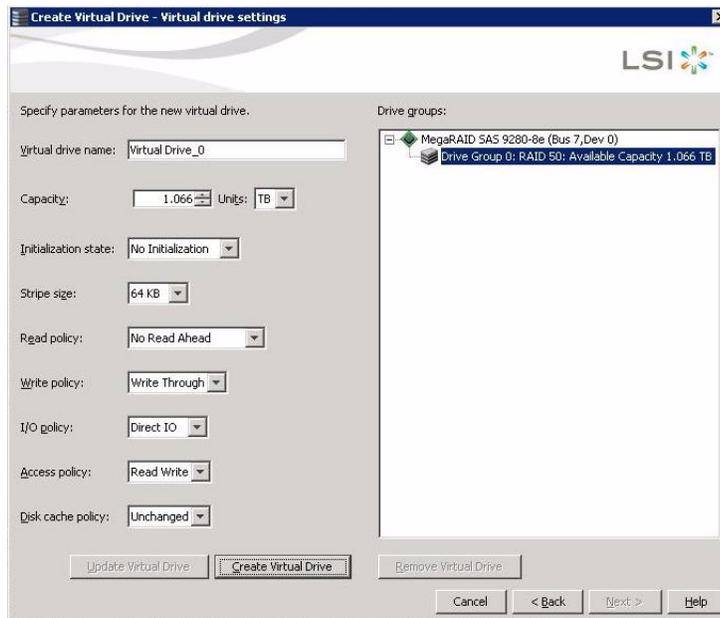
- g. Click **Create Drive Group** to make a drive group with the spans.
- h. Click **Next** to complete this step.

The Virtual drive settings window appears, as shown in [Figure 94](#). The drive group and the default virtual drive settings appear. The options to update the virtual drive or remove the virtual drive are grayed out until you create the virtual drive.

---

**NOTE:** The parameters in the Virtual drive settings window display in disabled mode (grayed out) for SAS-Integrated RAID (IR) controllers because these parameters do not apply to SAS-IR controllers.

---



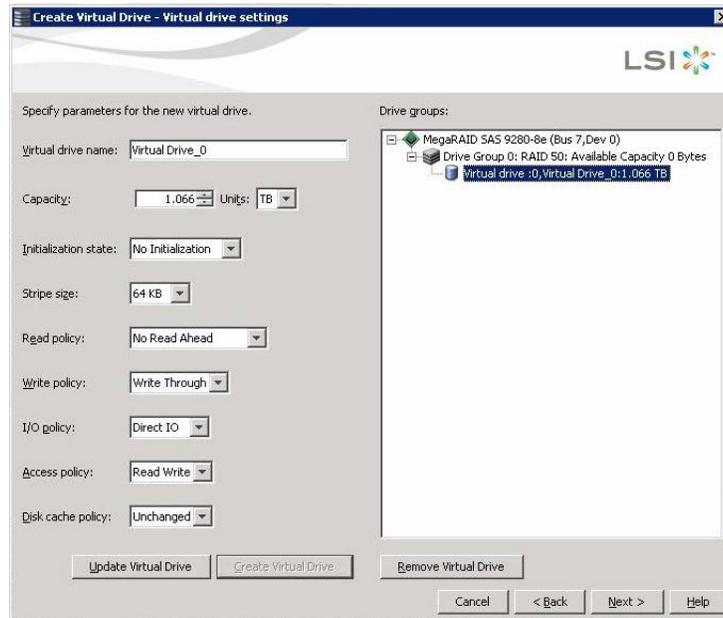
**Figure 94: Virtual Drive Settings Window**

12. Change any virtual drive settings, if desired.

See [Section 8.1.1, \*Selecting Virtual Drive Settings\*](#) for more information about the virtual drive settings.

13. Click **Create Virtual Drive**.

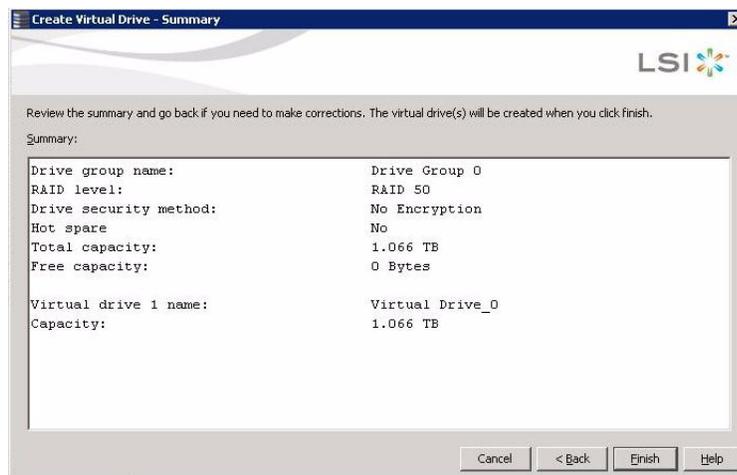
The new virtual drive appears under the drive group, as shown in [Figure 95](#). The options **Update Virtual Drive** and **Remove Virtual Drive** are now available. **Update Virtual Drive** allows you to change the virtual drive settings and **Remove Virtual Drive** allows you to delete the virtual drive.



**Figure 95: New Virtual Drive 0**

14. Click **Next**.

The **Create Virtual Drive - Summary** window appears, as shown in [Figure 96](#). This window shows the selections you made for advanced configuration.



**Figure 96: Create Virtual Drive Summary Window**

15. Click **Back** to return to the previous screen to change any selections or click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

The new storage configuration will be created and initialized.

---

**NOTE:** If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar appears as the drives spin up.

If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

---

After the configuration is completed, a dialog box notifies you that the virtual drives were created successfully. If more drive capacity exists, the dialog box asks whether you want to create more virtual drives. If no more drive capacity exists, you are prompted to close the configuration session.

16. Select **Yes** or **No** to indicate whether you want to create additional virtual drives.

If you select **Yes**, the system takes you to the Create Virtual Drive screen, as shown in [Figure 87](#). If you select **No**, the utility asks whether you want to close the wizard.

17. If you selected **No** in the previous step, select **Yes** or **No** to indicate whether you want to close the wizard.

If you select **Yes**, the configuration procedure closes. If you select **No**, the dialog box closes and you remain on the same page.

## 8.2 Selecting Full Disk Encryption Security Options

---

### 8.2.1 Enabling Drive Security

---

The Full Disk Encryption feature provides the ability to encrypt data and use disk-based key management for your data security solution. This solution provides protection to the data in the event of theft or loss of physical drives. This section describes how to enable, change, or disable drive security, and how to import a foreign configuration.

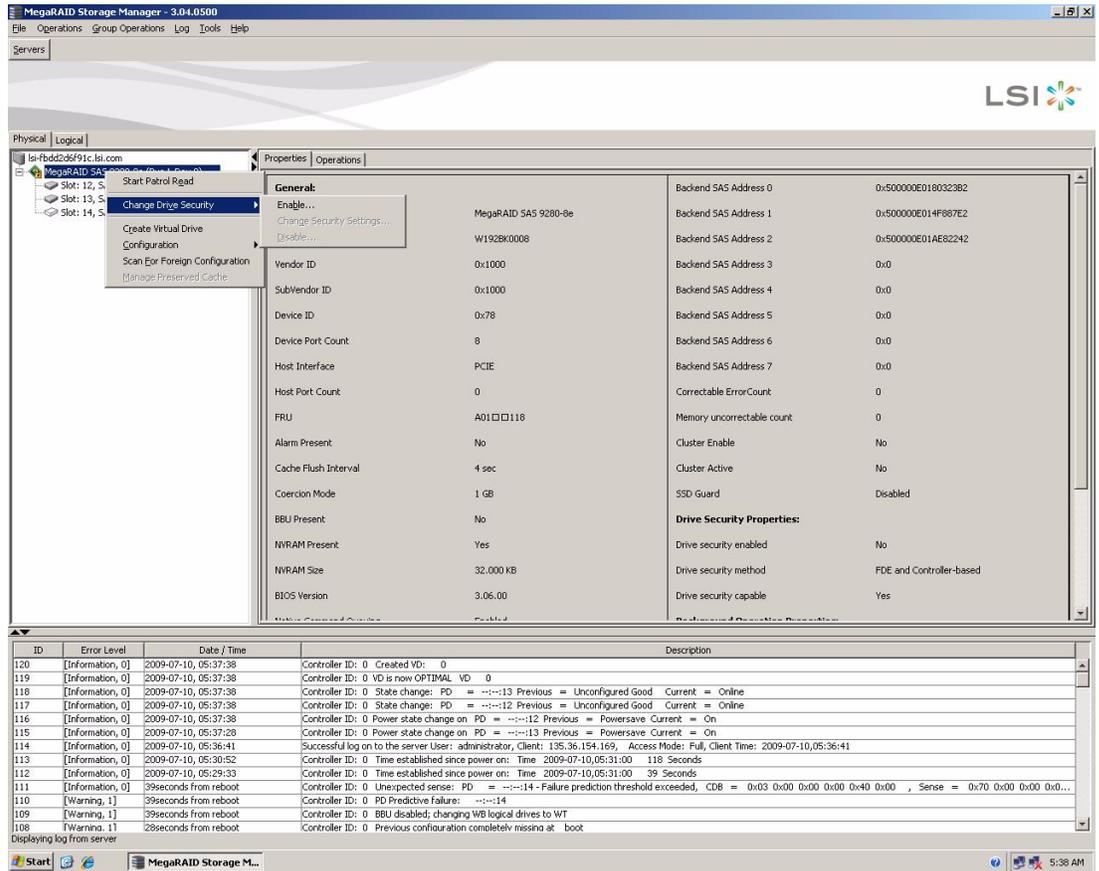
Perform the following steps to enable drive security. To do this, you create a security key identifier, security key, and (optional) passphrase.

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click a controller icon.
2. Right-click on the controller icon to display the menu of operations available.
3. Select **Change Drive Security->Enable**, as shown in [Figure 97](#).

---

**NOTE:** You can also access the drive security settings menu by clicking the Operations menu on the menu bar and selecting **Change Drive Security->Enable**.

---



**Figure 97: Drive Security Settings Menu**

The Enable Drive Security – Introduction screen appears as shown in Figure 98. This screen describes how the wizard will help you create a security on the controller. After you create a security key, you have the option to create secure virtual drives using the security key.

First, create the security key identifier. The identifier appears whenever you have to enter the security key. If you have more than one security key, the identifier helps you determine which security key to enter.

Next, create a security key. You need the security key to perform certain operations. Finally, you have the option to create a passphrase for additional security. If you create a passphrase, you must enter it whenever you boot your server.



**Figure 98: Enable Drive Security - Introduction Screen**

4. On the introduction screen, click **Next**.

The Enter Security Key ID screen appears, as shown in [Figure 99](#).



**Figure 99: Enter Security Key ID Screen**

5. Use the default security key identifier or enter a new security key identifier.

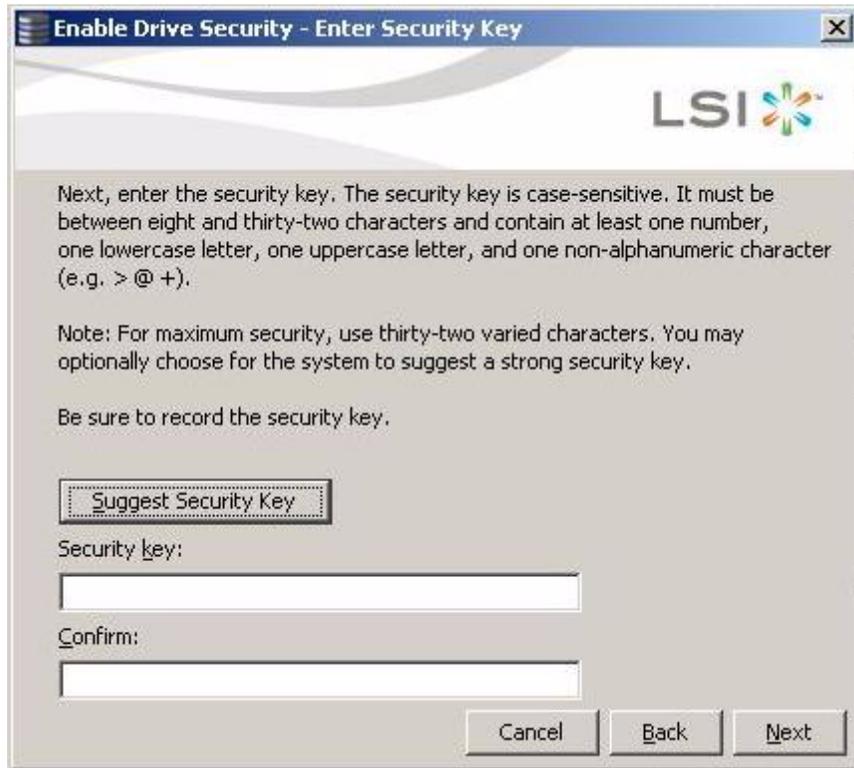
---

**NOTE:** If you create more than one security key, it is highly recommended that you change the security key identifier. Otherwise, you cannot differentiate between the security keys.

---

6. Click **Next**.

The Enable Security Key ID screen appears as shown in [Figure 100](#).



**Figure 100: Enter Security Key Screen**

7. Click **Suggest Security Key** to have the systems create the security key or enter a new security key. Enter the new security key again to confirm.

---

**NOTE: If you forget the security key, you will lose access to your data.** Be sure to record your security key information. You might need to enter the security key to perform certain operations.

---

The security key is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

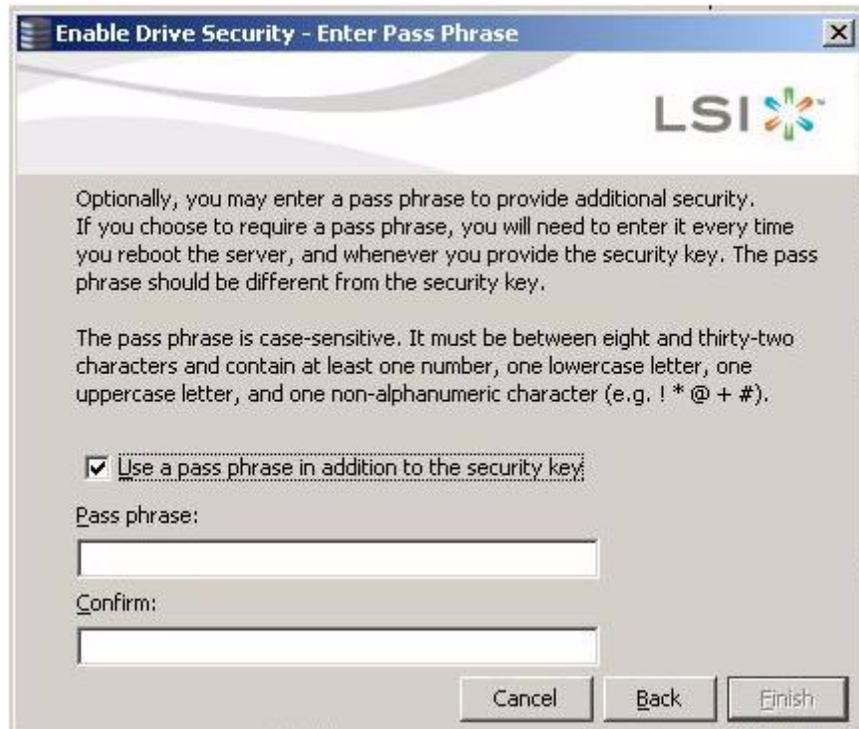
---

**NOTE:** Non-US keyboard users must be careful not to enter DBCS characters in the security key field. Firmware works with the ASCII character set only.

---

8. Click **Next**.

The Enter Pass Phrase screen appears, as shown in [Figure 101](#).



**Figure 101: Enable Drive Security - Enter Pass Phrase Screen**

9. Click **Use a pass phrase in addition to the security key** if you want to use the pass phrase for additional security.
10. Enter a passphrase in the **Pass phrase** field and then enter the passphrase in the **Confirm** field.

The passphrase is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

Warning messages appear if there is a mismatch between the characters entered in the Passphrase field and the Confirm field, or if there is an invalid character entered.

---

**CAUTION:** Be sure to record the passphrase. If you lose the passphrase, you could lose access to your data.

---

11. Click **Next**.

The Confirm Enable Drive Security screen appears, as shown in [Figure 102](#), to show the changes requested to the drive security settings.

---

**CAUTION: If you forget the security key, you will lose access to your data.** Be sure to record your security key. You might need to enter the security key to perform certain operations.

---



**Figure 102: Confirm Create Security Key Screen**

12. Confirm that you want to enable drive security on this controller and have recorded the security settings for future reference.

MSM enables drive security and returns you to the main menu.

### **8.2.2 Changing the Security Key Identifier, Security Key, and Pass Phrase**

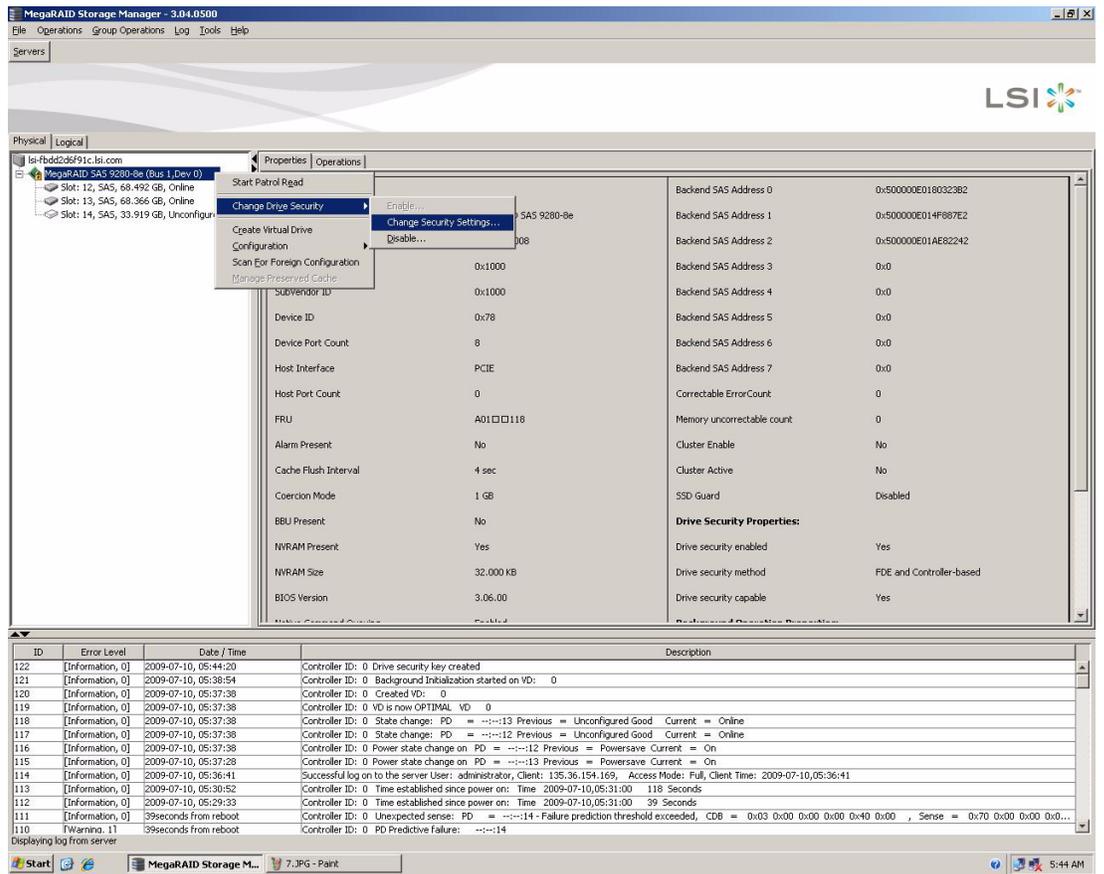
Perform the following steps to change the encryption settings for the security key identifier, security key, and pass phrase.

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click a controller icon.
2. Right-click on the controller icon to display the menu of operations available.
3. Select **Change Drive Security->Change Security Settings**, as shown in [Figure 103](#).

---

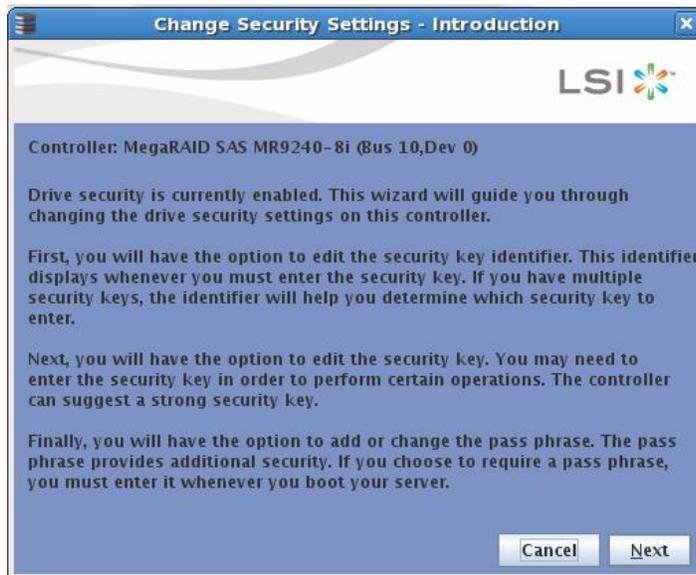
**NOTE:** You can also access the drive security settings menu by clicking the Operations menu on the menu bar and selecting **Change Drive Security->Change Security Settings**.

---



**Figure 103: Change Drive Security Menu**

The Change Security Settings – Introduction screen appears as shown in Figure 104. This screen lists the actions you can perform, which include editing the security key identifier, security key, and the passphrase.



**Figure 104: Change Security Settings - Introduction Screen**

4. On the introduction screen, click **Next**.

The Change Security Settings - Security Key ID screen appears, as shown in [Figure 105](#).



**Figure 105: Change Security Settings - Security Key ID Screen**

5. Keep the existing security key identifier or enter a new security key identifier.

---

**NOTE:** If you change the security key, it is highly recommended that you change the security key identifier. Otherwise, you will not be able to differentiate between the security keys.

---

6. Click **Next**.

The Change Security Settings - Security Key screen appears as shown in [Figure 106](#).



**Figure 106: Change Security Settings - Security Key Screen**

7. Click **Use the existing drive security key** to use the existing drive security key or enter a new security key and then enter the new security key again to confirm.

---

**CAUTION: If you forget the security key, you will lose access to your data.** Be sure to record your security key information. You might need to enter the security key to perform certain operations.

---

The security key is case-sensitive. It must be between eight and thirty-two characters and contain at least one number, one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, and one non-alphanumeric character (e.g. < > @ +). The space character is not permitted.

---

**NOTE:** Non-US keyboard users must be careful not to enter DBCS characters in the security key field. Firmware works with the ASCII character set only.

---

8. Click **Next**.

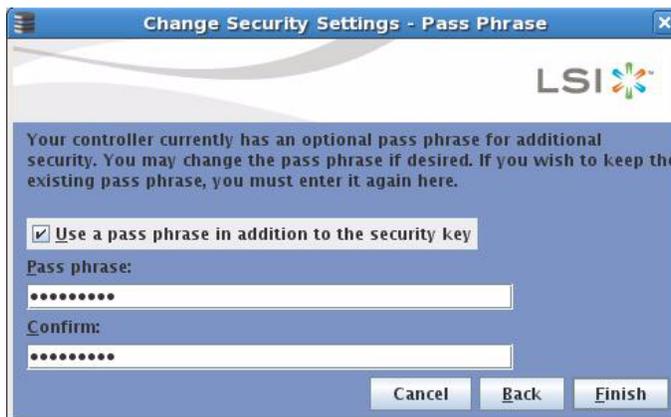
The Authenticate Drive Security Settings Screen appears, as shown in [Figure 107](#). Authentication is required for the changes that you requested to the drive security settings.



**Figure 107: Authenticate Drive Security Settings Screen**

9. Enter the current security key to authenticate the changes.

The Change Security Settings - Pass Phrase screen appears, as shown in [Figure 108](#).



**Figure 108: Change Security Settings - Pass Phrase Screen**

10. If you choose to, click the option to use a passphrase in addition to the security key.

11. If you chose to use a passphrase, either enter the existing passphrase or enter a new passphrase, and enter the passphrase again to confirm.

The text box for the passphrase can hold up to 32 characters. The key must be at least eight characters.

The next screen that appears describes the changes you made and asks you whether you want to confirm these changes.

12. Click the checkbox to confirm that you have recorded the security settings for future reference and then click **Yes** to confirm that you want to change the drive security settings.

MSM updates the existing configuration on the controller to use the new security settings and returns you to the main menu.

### 8.2.3 Disabling Drive Security

---

---

**NOTE:** If you disable drive security, your existing data will not be secure and you cannot create any new secure virtual drives. Disabling drive security does not affect the security of data on foreign drives. If you removed any drives that were previously secured, you will still need to enter the passphrase when you import them. Otherwise, you will not be able to access the data on those drives.

---

---

**NOTE:** If there are any secure drive groups on the controller, you cannot delete the security key and a warning screen appears. In order to delete the security key, you must first delete the virtual drives on all of the secure drive groups.

---

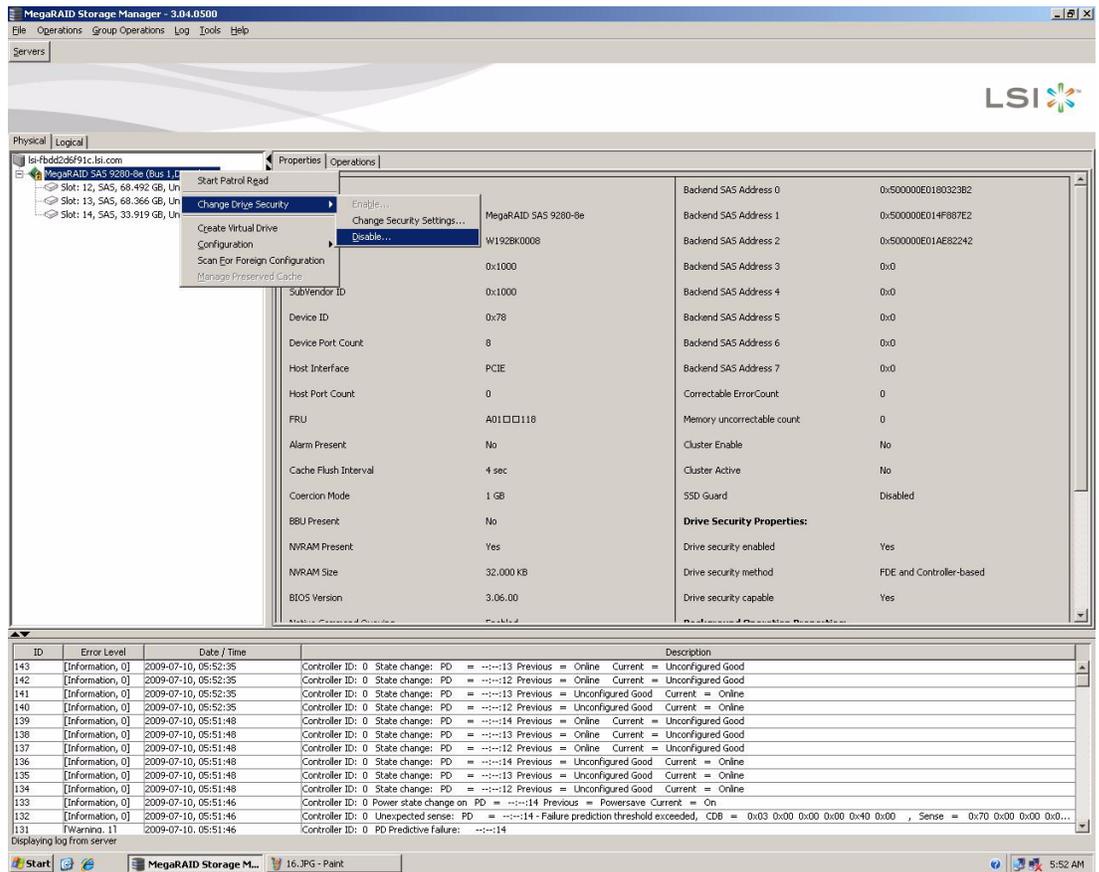
Perform the following steps to disable drive security.

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click a controller icon.
2. Right-click on the controller icon to display the menu of operations available.
3. Select **Change Drive Security->Disable**, as shown in [Figure 109](#).

---

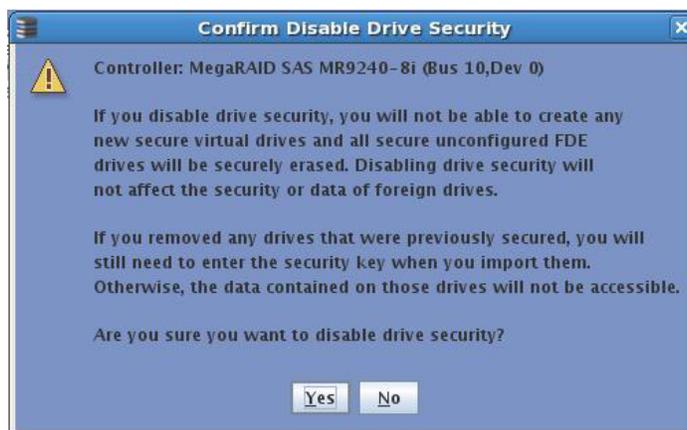
**NOTE:** You can also access the drive security settings menu by clicking the Operations menu on the menu bar and selecting **Change Drive Security->Disable**.

---



**Figure 109: Change Drive Security Menu**

The Confirm Disable Drive Security screen appears as shown in [Figure 110](#).



**Figure 110: Confirm Disable Drive Security Screen**

4. To disable drive security, click **Yes**.

MSM disables drive security and returns you to the main menu.

## 8.2.4 Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration

---

A foreign configuration is a RAID configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system.

After you create a security key, you can run a scan for a foreign configuration. (You can import unsecured or unlocked configurations when security is disabled.) If locked drives are present and security is enabled, then you can use the “Unlock foreign drives” dialog to enter the security key and unlock the configuration. The import dialog appears next for you to select to import a foreign drive.

In addition, if one or more drives are removed from a configuration, by a cable pull or drive removal, for example, the configuration on those drives is considered a foreign configuration by the RAID controller.

You can use the MegaRAID Storage Manager to import the foreign configuration to the RAID controller or to clear the configuration so you can create a new configuration using these drives.

To import a foreign configuration, you must first enable security to allow importation of locked foreign drives. After you create a security key, you can run a scan for a foreign configuration and import the configuration. If MSM detects a foreign configuration, the import screen appears. To import the drives, you must provide the security key used to secure them. If the drives are locked and the controller security is disabled, you cannot import the foreign drives. Only unlocked drives can be imported.

Verify whether any drives are left to import as the locked drives can use different security keys. If there are any drives left, repeat the import process for the remaining drives. Once all the drives are imported, there is no configuration to import.

---

**NOTE:** When you create a new configuration, MSM shows only the unconfigured drives. Drives that have existing configurations, including foreign configurations, will **not** appear. To use drives with existing configurations, you must first clear the configuration on those drives.

---

Perform the following steps to import or clear a configuration.

1. Enable drive security to allow importation of locked foreign drives. See [Section 8.2.1, Enabling Drive Security](#) for the procedure used to enable drive security.
2. After you create a security key, right-click on the controller and click **Scan for Foreign Configuration**.

If there are locked drives (security is enabled), the Unlock foreign drives dialog box appears.

3. Enter the security key and unlock the configuration.

The Foreign Configuration Detected screen appears, as shown in [Figure 111](#).



**Figure 111: Foreign Configuration Detected Screen**

4. Click **Import** to import the foreign configuration from all of the foreign drives, **Clear** to remove the configuration from all foreign drives, or **Advanced** to preview and import specific foreign configurations.
5. Click **OK**.

The operation cannot be reversed after it is started. Imported drives display as *Online* in the MegaRAID Storage Manager menu.

#### 8.2.4.1 Foreign Configurations in Cable Pull and Drive Removal Scenarios

If one or more drives are removed from a configuration, by a cable pull or drive removal, for example, the configuration on those drives is considered a foreign configuration by the RAID controller.

The following scenarios can occur with cable pulls or drive removals. Use the **Foreign Configuration Preview** screen to import or clear the foreign configuration in each case.

---

**NOTE:** If you want to import the foreign configuration in any of the following scenarios, you should have all of the drives in the enclosure before you perform the import operation.

---

- Scenario #1: If all of the drives in a configuration are removed and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

---

**NOTE:** Start a consistency check immediately after the rebuild is complete to ensure data integrity for the virtual drives.

See [Section 10.2, Running a Consistency Check](#) for more information about checking data consistency.

---

- Scenario #2: If some of the drives in a configuration are removed and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

---

**NOTE:** Start a consistency check immediately after the rebuild is complete to ensure data integrity for the virtual drives.

See [Section 10.2, Running a Consistency Check](#) for more information about checking data consistency.

---

- Scenario #3: If all of the drives in a virtual drive are removed, but at different times, and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, all drives that were pulled *before* the virtual drive became offline will be imported and then automatically rebuilt. Automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

- Scenario #4: If the drives in a non-redundant virtual drive are removed, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. No rebuilds will occur after the import operation because there is no redundant data to rebuild the drives with.

### 8.3 Adding Hot Spare Drives

---

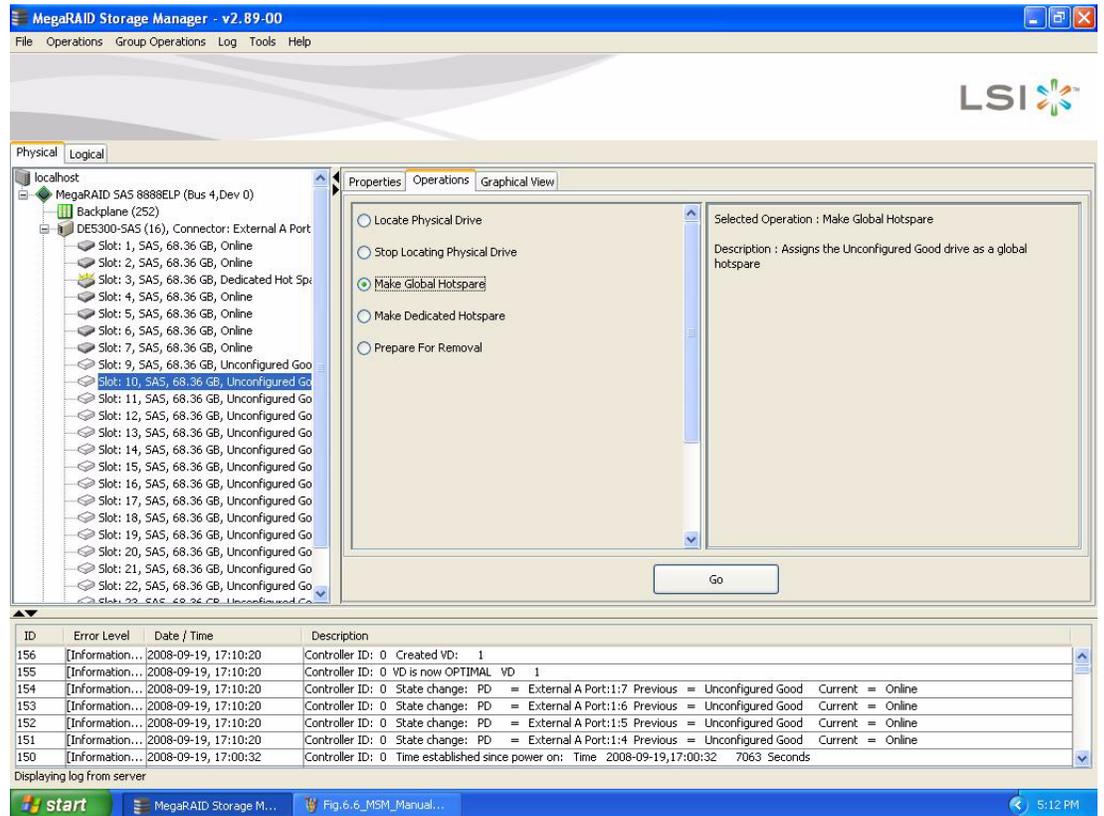
Hot spares are drives that are available to automatically replace failed drives in a RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 virtual drive. *Dedicated hot spares* can be used to replace failed drives in a selected drive group only. *Global hot spares* are available to any virtual drive on a specific controller.

To add a dedicated or global hot spare drive, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and select the icon of an unused drive.

For each drive, the screen displays the port number, enclosure number, slot number, drive state, drive capacity, and drive manufacturer.

2. In the right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Operations** tab.
3. Select **Make Dedicated Hotspare** or **Make Global Hotspare**, as shown in [Figure 112](#).



**Figure 112: Creating a Global Hot Spare**

1. If you selected **Make Dedicated Hotspare**, select a drive group from the list that appears in the right frame. The hot spare will be dedicated to the drive group that you select.

If you selected **Make Global Hotspare**, skip this step and go to the next step. The hot spare will be available to any virtual drive on a specific controller.

2. Click **Go** to create the hot spare.

The drive state for the drive changes to hot spare.

## 8.4 Changing Adjustable Task Rates

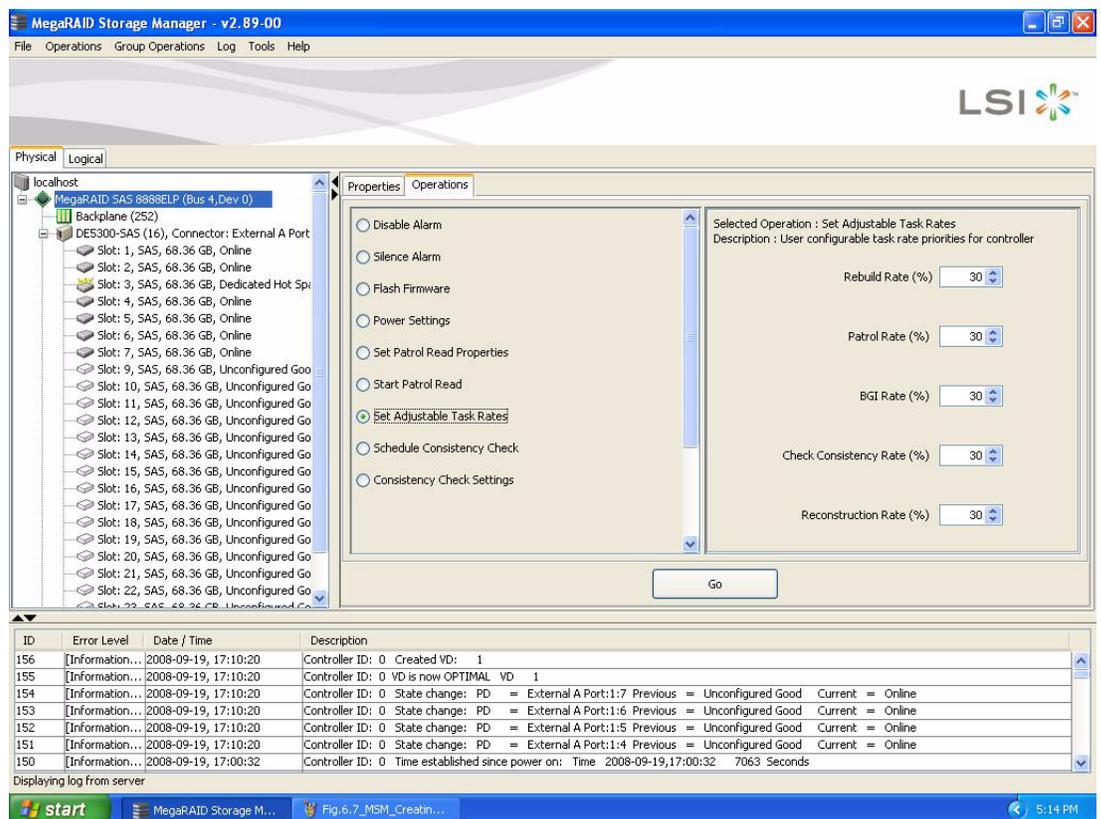
Follow these steps if you need to change the adjustable rates for rebuilds, and other system tasks that run in the background:

**NOTE:** LSI recommends that you leave the adjustable task rates at their default settings to achieve the best system performance. If you raise the task rates above the defaults, foreground tasks will run more slowly and it may seem that the system is not responding. If you lower the task rates below the defaults, rebuilds and other background tasks may run very slowly and may not complete within a reasonable time. If you decide to change the values, record the original default value here so you can restore them later, if necessary:

**Rebuild Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Background Initialization (BGI) Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Check Consistency Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and select a controller icon.
2. In the right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Operations** tab, and select **Set Adjustable Task Rates**.

The default task rates appear in the right panel, as shown in [Figure 113](#).



**Figure 113: Set Adjustable Task Rates**

3. Enter changes, as needed, to the task rates for Rebuild Rate, Background Initialization (BGI) Rate (for fast initialization), and Check Consistency Rate (for consistency checks). Each task rate can be set from 0 to 100. The higher the number, the faster the activity will run in the background, possibly impacting other system tasks.
4. Click **Go** to accept the new task rates.
5. When the warning message appears, click **OK** to confirm that you want to change the task rates.

## 8.5 Changing Power Settings

The RAID controller includes Dimmer Switch™ technology that conserves energy by placing certain unused drives into powersave mode. You can use the **Power Settings** field to choose whether to allow unconfigured drives to enter powersave mode.

When this option is selected, unconfigured drives may be spun down. When not selected, these drives are not spun down. The controller will automatically spin up drives from powersave mode whenever necessary. The powersave option is not selected by default. You have to select it to enable spin-down of drives.

---

**NOTE:** If your controller does not support this option, the **Power Settings** field does not display.

---

Follow these steps if you need to change the powersave setting.

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and select a controller icon.
2. In the right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Operations** tab, and select **Power Settings**.

Figure 113 displays the **Operations** menu and the **Power Settings** field.

3. Click **Go** to allow unconfigured drives to enter powersave mode.

Your power settings are saved and the screen is refreshed so that the **Operations** tab is selected, but no operations are selected.

On the device menu in the left panel of the physical view screen, the nodes for the unconfigured good drives that are spun down appear - **Powersave** after their status.

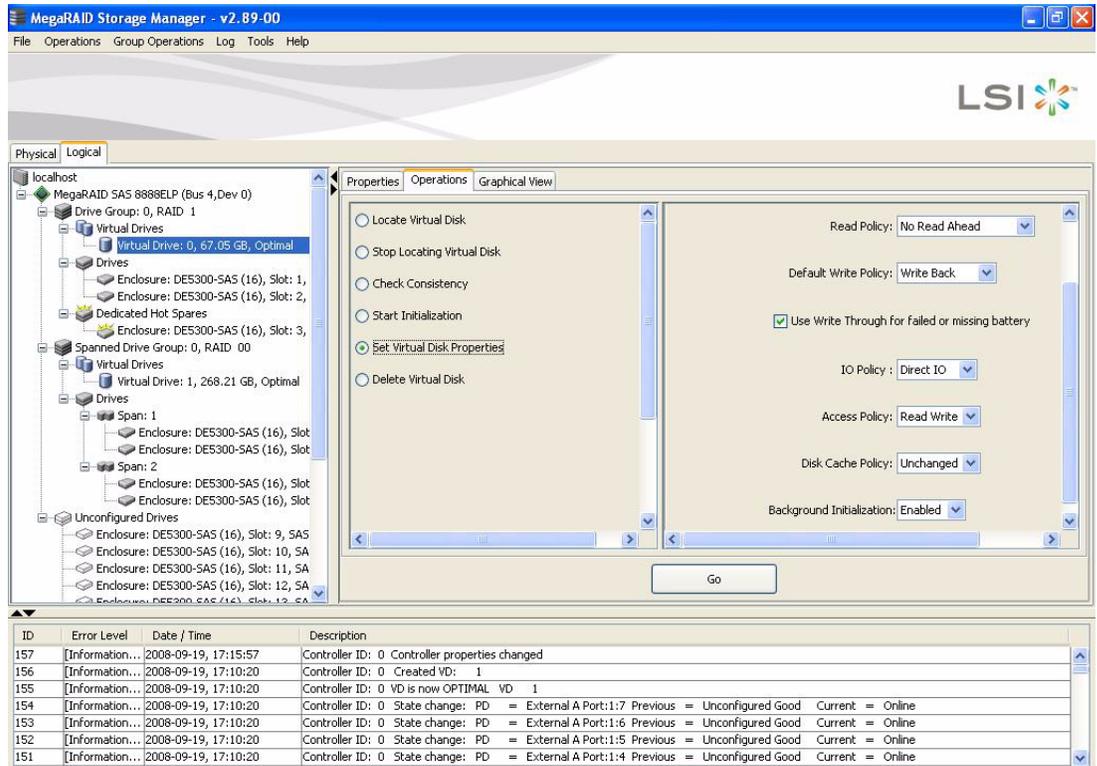
If you go back to the **Power Settings** operation, the checkbox displays the saved setting.

## 8.6 Changing Virtual Drive Properties

You can change a virtual drive's Read Policy, Write Policy, and other properties at any time after the virtual drive is created. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Logical** view tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select a virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
3. In the right panel, select the **Operations** tab, and then select **Set Virtual Drive Properties**.

A list of Virtual Drive Properties appears in the right panel, as shown in [Figure 114](#).



**Figure 114: Set Virtual Drive Properties**

4. Change the virtual drive properties as needed in the right panel.  
For information about these properties, see [Section 8.1.1, Selecting Virtual Drive Settings](#).
5. Click **Go** to accept the changes.

## 8.7 Changing a Virtual Drive Configuration

You can use the Modify Drive Group Wizard in MSM to change the configuration of a virtual drive by adding drives to the virtual drive, removing drives from it, or changing its RAID level.

**CAUTION:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you change its configuration.

**NOTE:** You cannot change the configuration of a RAID 10, or RAID 50, or RAID 60 virtual drive. You cannot change a RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6 configuration if two or more virtual drives are defined on a single drive group. (The *Logical* view tab shows which drive groups and drives are used by each virtual drive.)

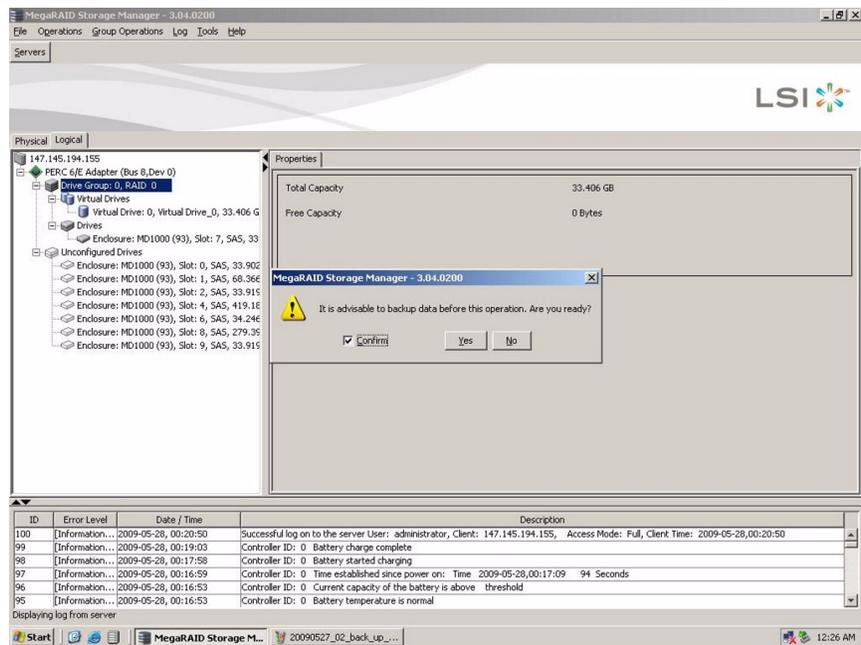
### 8.7.1 Accessing the Modify Drive Group Wizard

**NOTE:** The Modify Drive Group Wizard was previously known as the Reconstruction Wizard.

Perform the following steps to access the Modify Drive Group Wizard options:

1. Click the **Logical** view tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select a drive group in the left panel of the window.
3. Select **Operations->Modify Drive Group** from the menu bar, or right-click the virtual drive icon to access the Modify Drive Group Wizard.

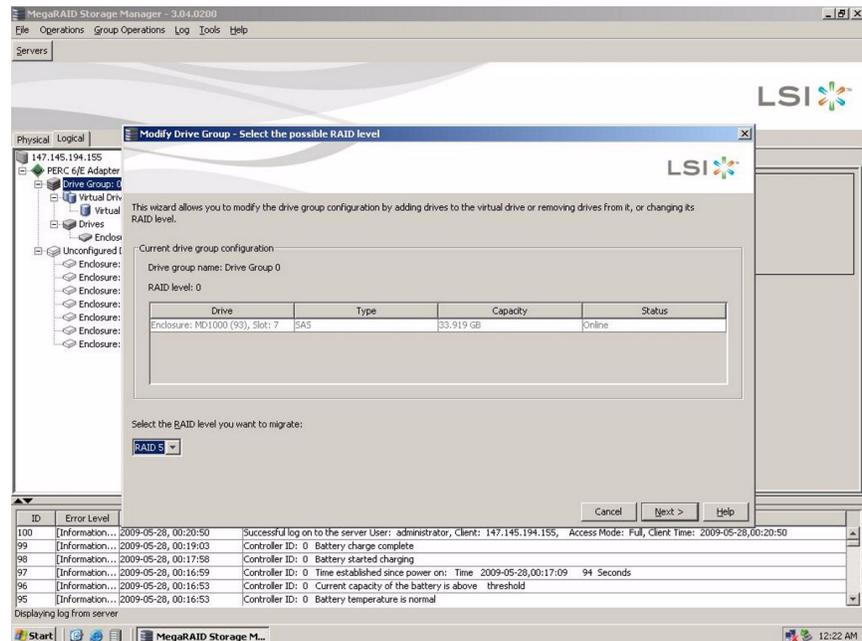
A warning to back up your data appears, as shown in [Figure 115](#).



**Figure 115: Data Backup Warning**

4. Select **Confirm** at the warning and click **Yes**.

The Modify Drive Group Wizard screen appears, as shown in [Figure 116](#).



**Figure 116: Modify Drive Group Wizard**

The following sections explain the Modify Drive Group Wizard options.

### 8.7.2 Adding a Drive or Drives to a Configuration

**CAUTION:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you add a drive to it.

Follow these steps to add a drive or drives to a configuration with the Modify Drive Group Wizard:

1. Access the Modify Drive Group Wizard screen, as shown in [Section 8.7.1, Accessing the Modify Drive Group Wizard](#).
2. Select the RAID level that you want to change the drive group to.

This screen states the number of drives that you have to add to change the RAID level from the current level to the new RAID level.

3. Click **Next** on the Modify Drive Group Wizard menu, as shown in [Figure 116](#).
4. When the next screen appears, select the *Unconfigured Good* drive(s) to add from the list of drives, and click **Next**.

**NOTE:** The drive(s) you add must have the same capacity as or greater capacity than the drives already in the drive group, or you cannot change the RAID level.

The Summary screen appears. This screen shows the current settings and the settings after the drives are added.

5. Review the configuration information.
6. Click **Finish**.

A confirmation message appears. The message states that this operation cannot be aborted and asks whether you want to continue.

7. Click **Yes** to accept and complete the addition of the drives to the drive group.

### 8.7.3 Removing a Drive from a Configuration

---

**CAUTION:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you remove a drive from it.

---

Follow these steps to remove a drive from a RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6 configuration with the Modify Drive Group Wizard.

**NOTE:** This option is not available for RAID 0 configurations.

---

1. Access the Modify Drive Group Wizard screen, as shown in [Section 8.7.1, Accessing the Modify Drive Group Wizard](#).
2. Select the RAID level that you want to change the drive group to.
3. Click **Next** on the Modify Drive Group Wizard menu, as shown in [Figure 116](#).
4. When the next screen appears, select the *Online* drive(s) to remove from the list of drives, and click **Next**.

The Summary screen appears. This screen shows the current settings and the settings after the drives are removed.

5. Review the configuration information.
6. Click **Finish**.

A confirmation message appears. The message states that this operation cannot be aborted and asks whether you want to continue.

7. Click **Yes** to accept and complete the deletion of the drive(s) from the drive group.

### 8.7.4 Changing the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive

---

**CAUTION:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you change the RAID level.

---

Follow these steps to change the RAID level of the virtual drive with the Modify Drive Group Wizard:

1. Access the Modify Drive Group Wizard screen, as shown in [Section 8.7.1, Accessing the Modify Drive Group Wizard](#).
2. On the Modify Drive Group Wizard screen, select the RAID level that you want to change the drive group to.
3. Click **Next** on the Modify Drive Group Wizard menu, as shown in [Figure 116](#).

The Summary screen appears. This screen displays the current settings and the settings after the RAID level is changed.

4. Review the configuration information.
5. Click **Finish**.

A confirmation message appears. It states that this operation cannot be aborted and asks whether you want to continue.

6. Click **Yes** to accept and complete the change of the RAID level.

## 8.8 Deleting a Virtual Drive

**CAUTION:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you delete it. Be sure that the operating system is not installed on this virtual drive.

You can delete virtual drives to rearrange the storage space. To delete a virtual drive, follow these steps:

1. Back up all user data on the virtual drive you intend to delete.
2. In the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Logical** tab, and click the icon of the virtual drive you want to delete.
3. In the right panel, select the **Operations** tab, and select **Delete Virtual Drive**.
4. When the warning messages appear, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to delete the virtual drive.

## 8.9 Saving a Storage Configuration to Drive

You can save an existing controller configuration to a file so you can apply it to another controller. To save a configuration file, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. On the menu bar, select **Operations->Configuration->Save Configuration to file**.  
The Save dialog box appears.
3. In the Save dialog box, type a name for the configuration file, or accept the default name (`hostname.cfg`).
4. Click **Save** to save the configuration file.

## 8.10 Clearing a Storage Configuration from a Controller

You must clear a storage configuration from a controller before you can create a new configuration on the controller or load a previously saved configuration file.

**CAUTION:** Before you clear a configuration, be sure to save any data that you want to keep. Clearing a configuration deletes all data from the drives of the existing configuration. Be sure that the operating system is not installed on this configuration.

To clear a configuration from a controller, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. On the menu bar, select **Operations->Configuration->Clear Configuration**.  
A warning message appears that states that clearing the configuration will destroy the virtual drives and result in data loss on the selected controller.
3. Click **Yes** to clear the configuration or **No** to cancel the operation.

## 8.11 Adding a Saved Storage Configuration

When you replace a controller, or when you want to duplicate an existing storage configuration on a new controller, you can add a saved configuration to the controller.

---

**CAUTION:** When you add a saved configuration to a replacement controller, be sure that the number and capacity of the drives connected to the controller are exactly the same as when the configuration was saved.

---

To add a saved configuration, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. On the menu bar, select **Operations->Configuration->Add Configuration from file**.

A warning message appears that states that this operation may cause an unstable condition because of differences in the two configurations.

3. Click **Yes**.
4. When the Open dialog box appears, select the configuration file, and click **Open**.
5. View the configuration detail, and then select **Apply**.
6. Confirm the new configuration when prompted.



# Chapter 9

## Monitoring System Events and Storage Devices

This chapter explains how to use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to monitor the status of drives, virtual drives, and other storage devices.

### 9.1 Monitoring System Events

MegaRAID Storage Manager software monitors the activity and performance of all controllers in the system and the storage devices connected to them. When an event occurs (such as the creation of a new virtual drive or the removal of a drive) an event message appears in the log displayed at the bottom of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, as shown in Figure 117.

You can use MegaRAID Storage Manager to alert you about events. There are settings are for the delivery of alerts, the severity level of events, exceptions, and email settings.

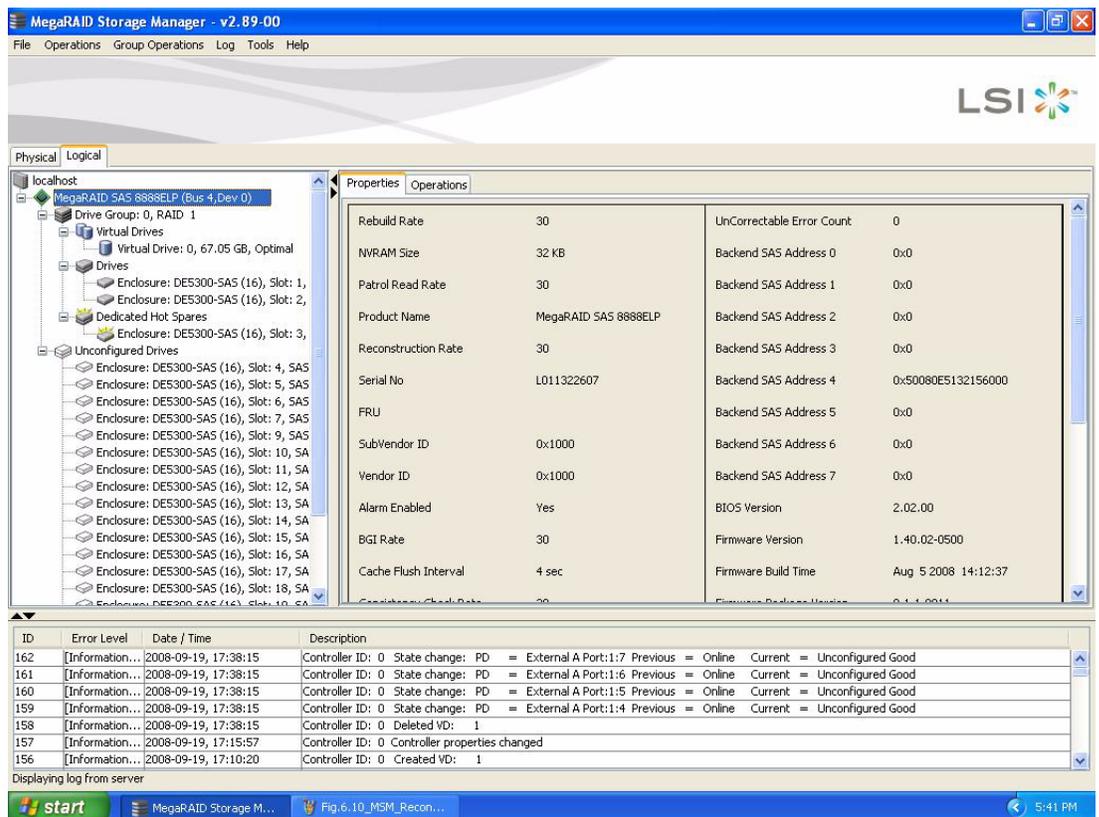


Figure 117: Event Information Window

Each message that appears in the event log has a severity level that indicates the importance of the event, as shown in [Table 90](#), a date and timestamp, and a brief description. You can click an event to display the same information in a window. (For a list of all events, see [Appendix A, Events and Messages](#))

**Table 90: Event Severity Levels**

Severity Level	Meaning
Information	Informational message. No user action is necessary.
Warning	Some component might be close to a failure point.
Critical	A component has failed, but the system has not lost data.
Fatal	A component has failed, and data loss has occurred or will occur.

The Log menu has four options:

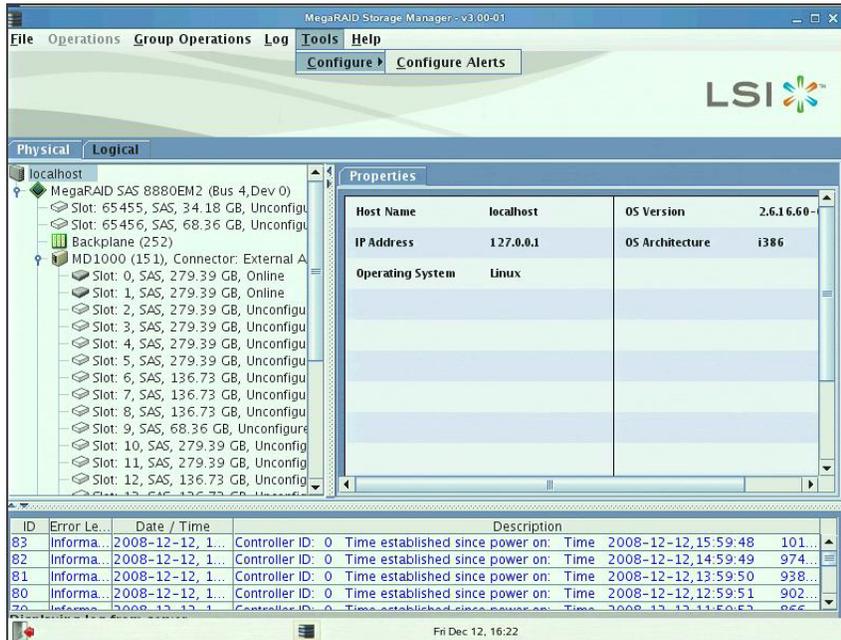
- **Save Log:** Saves the current log to a .log file.
- **Save Log Text:** Saves the current log in .txt format.
- **View Saved Log:** Enables you to load a local .log file.
- **Clear Log:** Clears the current log information. You have the option of saving the log first.

## 9.2 Configuring Alert Notifications

---

The Alert Notification Configuration feature allows you to control and configure the alerts that MegaRAID Storage Manager software sends when various system events occur.

To access this screen, select **Tools->Configure->Configure Alerts** on the main menu screen, as shown in [Figure 118](#).



**Figure 118: Alert Notification Configuration Menu**

The Alerts Notification Configuration screen appears, as shown in [Figure 119](#). The screen contains three tabs: **Alert Settings**, **Mail Server**, and **Email**. You can use each tab to perform tasks for that topic.



**Figure 119: Alerts Notification Configuration Screen**

You can select the **Alert Settings** tab to perform the following actions:

- Select the methods for the delivery of alerts.
- Change the severity level of events.
- Save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration.

- Load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog to edit or send to the monitor.

---

**NOTE:** When you load a saved backup file, all unsaved changes made in the current session will be lost.

---

You can select the **Mail Server** tab to perform the following actions:

- Enter or edit the sender e-mail address.
- Enter the SMTP server.
- Require authentication of the email server.
- Save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration.
- Load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog to edit or send to the monitor.

---

**NOTE:** When you load a saved backup file, all unsaved changes made in the current session will be lost.

---

You can select the **Email** tab to perform the following actions:

- Add new email addresses for recipients of alert notifications.
- Send test messages to the recipient email addresses.
- Remove email addresses of recipients of alert notifications.
- Save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration.
- Load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog to edit or send to the monitor.

---

**NOTE:** When you load a saved backup file, all unsaved changes made in the current session will be lost.

---

### 9.2.1 Setting Alert Delivery Methods

You can select the methods used to send alert deliveries, such as by popup, email, system log, or MSM log. You can select the alert delivery methods for each event severity level (Information, Warning, Critical and Fatal).

Perform the following steps to select the alert delivery methods:

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alerts Setting** tab.
2. Under the **Alerts Delivery Methods** heading, select one of the severity levels.
3. Click **Edit**.

The Alert Notification Delivery Methods dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 120](#).



**Figure 120: Alert Notification Delivery Methods Dialog Box**

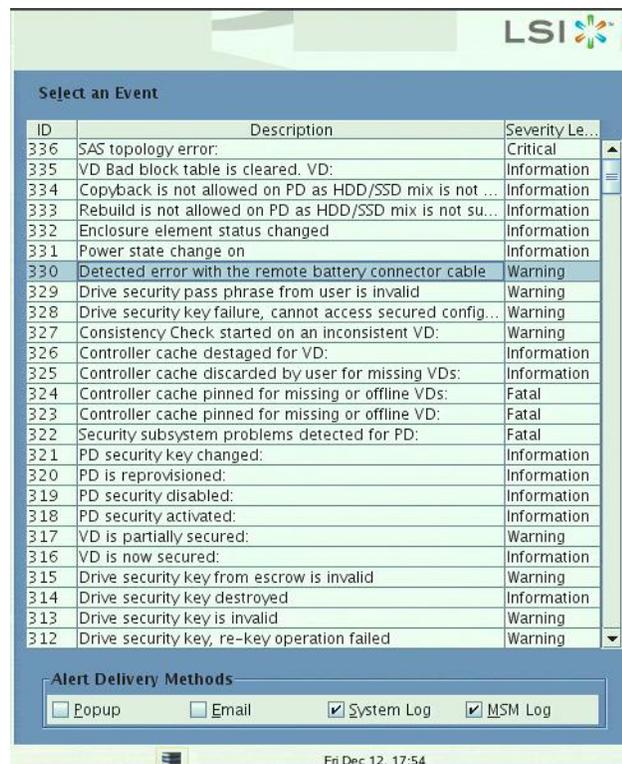
4. Select the desired alert delivery methods for alert notifications at the event severity level.
5. Click **OK** to set the delivery methods used for the severity level that you selected.

### 9.2.2 Changing Alert Delivery Methods for Individual Events

You can change the alert delivery options for an event without changing the severity level.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alerts Setting** tab.  
The the **Alerts Setting** portion of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 119](#).
2. Click **Change Individual Events**.

The **Change Individual Events** dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 121](#). The dialog box shows the events by their ID number, description, and severity level.



**Figure 121: Change Individual Events Dialog Box**

3. Click an event in the list to select it.

The current alert delivery methods appear for the selected event under the **Alert Delivery Methods** heading.

4. Select the desired alert delivery methods for the event.
5. Press ESC to return to the **Alerts Notification Configuration** screen.
6. Click **OK**.

This saves all of the changes made to the event.

### 9.2.3 Changing the Severity Level for Individual Events

---

To change the event severity level for a specific event, perform the following steps:

---

**NOTE:** See [Table 90](#) for details about the severity levels.

---

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alerts Setting** tab.

The **Alerts Setting** portion of the screen appears.

2. Click **Change Individual Events**.

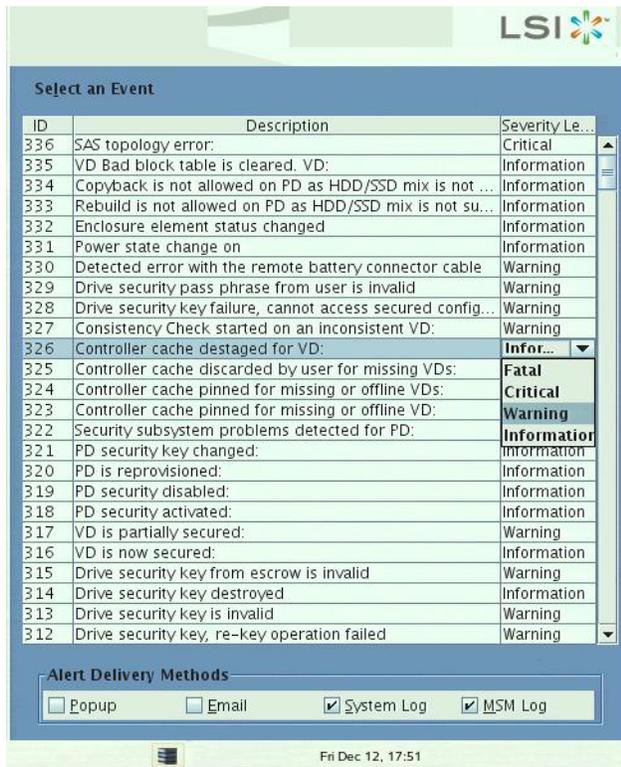
The **Change Individual Events** dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 121](#). The dialog box shows the events by their ID number, description, and severity level.

3. Click an event in the list to select it.

The current alert delivery methods appear for the selected event.

4. Click the **Severity** cell for the event.

The Event Severity drop-down menu appears for that event, as shown in [Figure 122](#).



**Figure 122: Change Individual Events Severity Level Menu**

5. Select a different severity level for the event from the menu.
6. Press ESC to return to the **Alerts Notification Configuration** screen.
7. Click **OK**.

This saves all of the changes made to the events.

**9.2.4 Entering or Editing the Sender Email Address and SMTP Server**

You can use the **Alerts Notification Configuration** screen to enter or edit the sender e-mail address and the SMTP server.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Mail Server** tab. The **Mail Server** options appear, as shown in [Figure 123](#).



**Figure 123: Mail Server Options**

2. Enter a new sender email address in the **Sender email address** field or edit the existing sender email address.
3. Click **OK**.

### 9.2.5 Authenticating a Server

You can use the Alerts Notification Configuration screen to authenticate the SMTP server, providing an extra level of security. The authentication check box enables the **User name** and **Password** fields when selected by default. Clearing the check box disables these fields.

Perform the following steps to enter or edit the address:

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Mail Server** tab.  
The **Mail Server** options appears, as shown in [Figure 123](#).  
The authentication check box is selected by default.
2. Enter a user name in the **User name** field.
3. Enter the password in the **Password** field.
4. Click **OK**.

### 9.2.6 Saving Backup Configurations

You can save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration. This includes all the settings on the three tabs.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alert Setting** tab, **Mail Server** tab, or **Email** tab.
2. Click **Save Backup**.  
The drive directory appears.
3. Enter a filename with an .xml extension for the backup configuration (in the format filename.xml).

4. Click **Save**.

The drive directory disappears.

5. Click **OK**.

The backup configuration is saved and the Alert Notification Configuration screen closes.

### 9.2.7 Loading Backup Configurations

---

You can load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog (all tabs) to edit or send to the monitor.

---

**NOTE:** If you choose to load a backup configuration and the Configure Alerts dialog currently contains changes that have not yet been sent to the monitor, the changes will be lost. You are prompted to confirm your choice.

---

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alert Setting** tab, **Mail Server** tab, or **Email** tab.

2. Click **Load Backup**.

You are prompted to confirm your choice. Then the drive directory appears from which you can select a backup configuration to load.

3. Select the backup configuration file (it should be in `.xml` format).

4. Click **Open**.

The drive directory disappears.

5. Click **OK**.

The backup configuration is saved and the Alerts Notification Configuration screen closes.

### 9.2.8 Adding Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications

---

The **Email** tab portion of the Alerts Notification Configuration screen shows the email addresses of recipients of the alert notifications. MegaRAID Storage Manager sends alert notifications to those email addresses. Use the screen to add or remove email addresses of recipients, and to send test messages to recipients that you add.

To add email addresses of recipients of the alert notifications, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **E-mail** tab on the Event Notification Configuration screen.

The **E-mail** section of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 124](#).



**Figure 124: Email Settings**

2. Enter the email address you want to add in the **New recipient email address** field.
3. Click **Add**.

The new email address appears in the **Recipient email addresses** field.

### 9.2.9 Testing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications

Use the **Email** tab portion of the Alerts Notification Configuration screen to send test messages to the email addresses that you added for the recipients of alert notifications.

1. Click the **E-mail** tab on the Event Notification Configuration screen.

The **E-mail** section of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 124](#).

2. Click an email address in the **Recipient email addresses** field.
3. Click **Test**.
4. Confirm whether the test message was sent to the email address.

If MegaRAID Storage Manager cannot send an email message to the email address, an error message appears.

### 9.2.10 Removing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications

Use the **Email** tab portion of the Alerts Notification Configuration screen to remove email addresses of the recipients of alert notifications.

1. Click the **E-mail** tab on the Event Notification Configuration screen.

The **E-mail** section of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 124](#).

2. Click an email address in the **Recipient email addresses** field.

The **Remove** button, which was grayed out, is now active.

3. Click **Remove**.

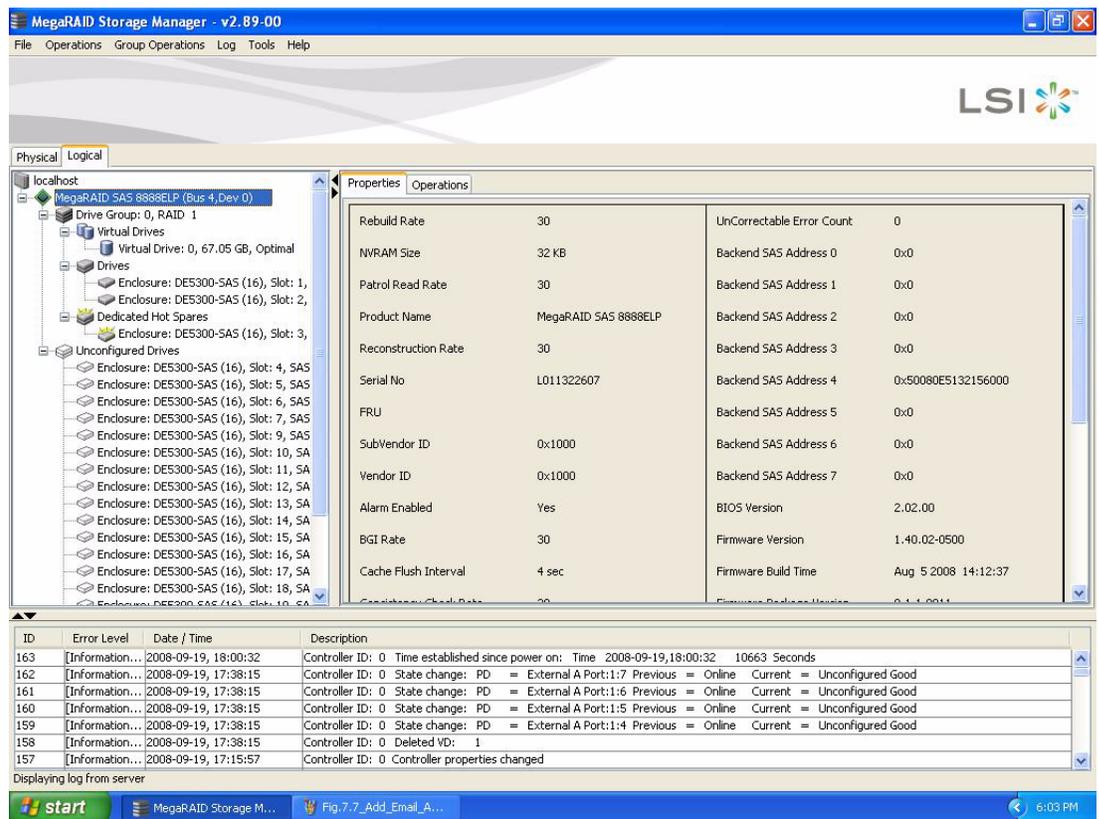
The email address is deleted from the list.

### 9.3 Monitoring Controllers

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all controllers in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. If the controller is operating normally, the controller icon looks like this: . If the controller has failed, a small red circle appears to the right of the icon. (See [Section 7.2.1, Physical/Logical View Panel](#) for a complete list of device icons.)

To display complete controller information, click a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Properties** tab in the right panel.

Figure 125 shows the Controller Information window.



**Figure 125: Controller Information**

Most of the information on this screen is self-explanatory. Note:

- The *Rebuild Rate*, *Patrol Read Rate*, *Reconstruction Rate*, *Consistency Check Rate*, and *BGI Rate* (background initialization) are all user selectable. For more information, see [Changing Adjustable Task Rates on page 205](#).
- The *BBU Present* field indicates whether a battery backup unit is installed.
- The *Alarm Present* and *Alarm Enabled* fields indicate whether the controller has an alarm to alert the user with an audible tone when there is an error or problem on the controller. There are options on the controller Properties tab for silencing or disabling the alarm.

All controller properties are defined in the [Appendix B, Glossary](#)

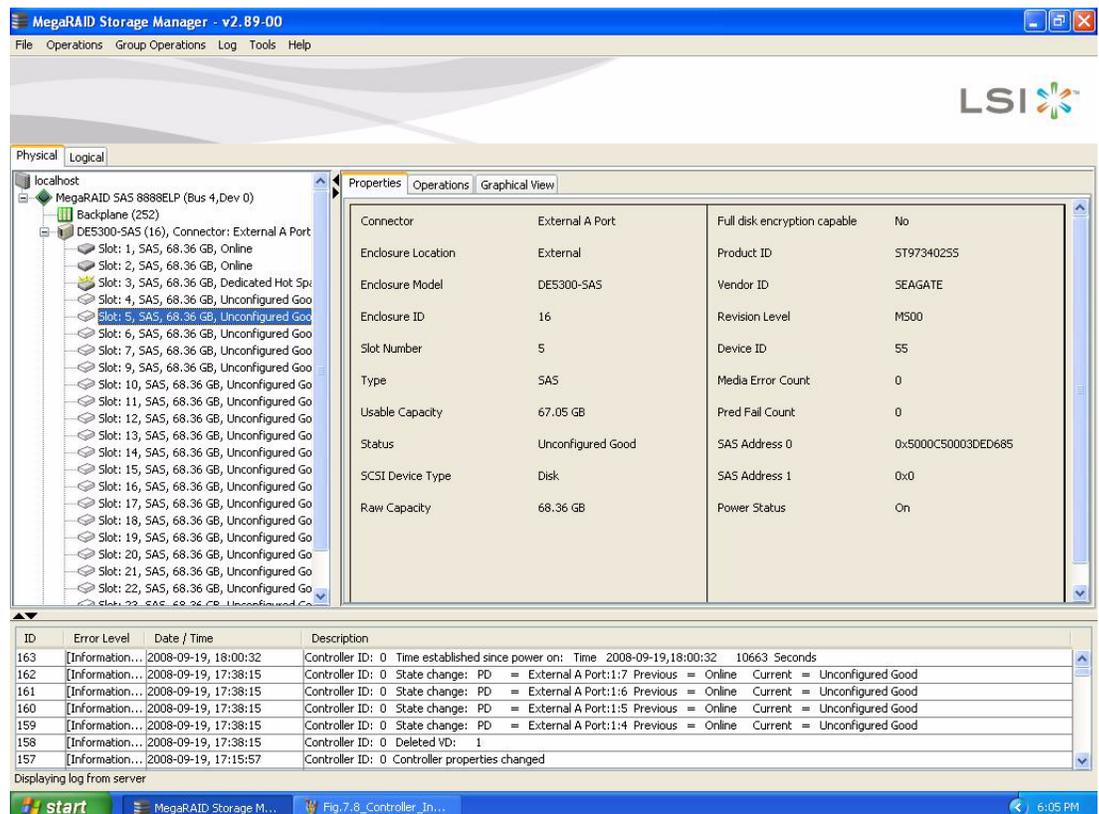
## 9.4 Monitoring Drives

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all drives in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. If the drive is operating normally, its icon looks like this: .

If the drive has failed, a small red circle appears to the right of the icon, like this: . (See [Section 7.2.1, Physical/Logical View Panel](#) for a complete list of device icons.)

To display complete drive information, click a drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Properties** tab in the right panel.

Figure 126 shows the Properties panel for a drive.



**Figure 126: Drive Information**

The information on this panel is self-explanatory. There are no user-selectable properties for physical devices. Icons for other storage devices such as CD-ROM drives and DAT drives can also appear in the left panel.

The **Power Status** property shows **On** when a drive is spun up and **Powersave** when a drive is spun down. Note that SSD drives and other drives that never spin down still show **On**.

If the drives are in a drive enclosure, you can identify which drive is represented by a drive icon on the left. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the drive icon in the left panel.
2. Click the **Operations** tab in the right panel.
3. Select **Locate Physical Drive**, and click **Go**.

The LED on the drive in the enclosure starts blinking to show its location.

---

**NOTE:** LEDs on drives that are global hot spares do not blink.

---

4. To stop the drive light from blinking, select **Stop Locating Physical Drive**, and click **Go**.

All of the drive properties are defined in the Glossary.

To display a graphical view of a drive, click a drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Graphical View** tab. In Graphical View, the drive's storage capacity is color coded according to the legend shown on the screen: configured space is blue, available space is white, and reserved space is red. When you select a virtual drive from the drop-down menu, the drive space used by that virtual drive is displayed in green.

## 9.5 Running a Patrol Read

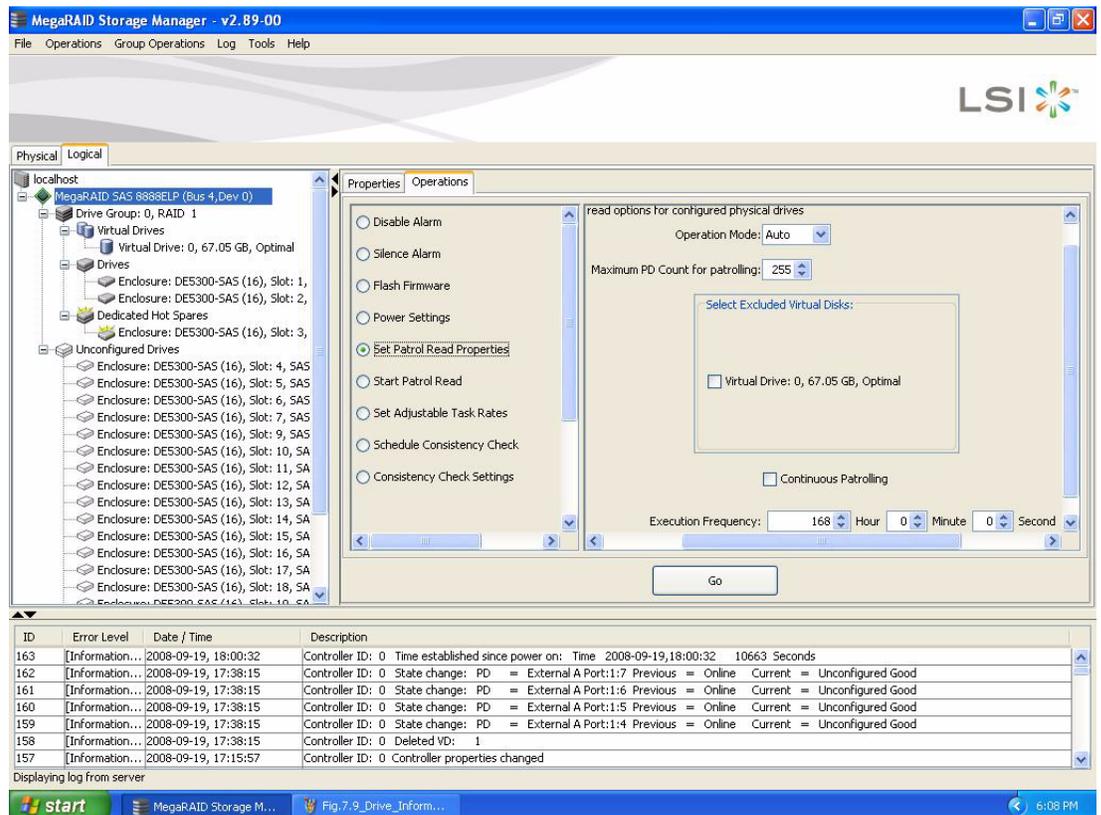
---

A patrol read periodically verifies all sectors of drives connected to a controller, including the system reserved area in the RAID configured drives. A patrol read can be used for all RAID levels and for all hot spare drives. A patrol read is initiated only when the controller is idle for a defined time period and has no other background activities. To start a patrol read, follow these steps:

1. Click a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select **Operations->Start Patrol Read**.

To change the patrol read settings, follow these steps:

3. Click the **Logical** tab.
4. Click a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
5. Select the **Operations** tab in the right panel, and select **Set Patrol Read Properties**, as shown in [Figure 127](#).



**Figure 127: Patrol Read Configuration**

6. Select an Operation Mode for a patrol read. The options are:
  - **Auto:** Patrol read runs automatically at the time interval you specify on this screen.
  - **Manual:** Patrol read runs only when you manually start it by selecting **Start Patrol Read** from the controller Options panel.
  - **Disabled:** Patrol read does not run.
7. (Optional) Specify a maximum count of drives to include in the patrol read. The count must be between 0 and 255.
8. (Optional) Select virtual drives on this controller to **exclude** from the patrol read. The existing virtual drives are listed in the gray box. To exclude a virtual drive, check the box next to it.
9. (Optional) Change the frequency at which the patrol read will run. The default frequency is 7 days (168 hours), which is suitable for most configurations. (You can select *second*, *minute*, or *hour* as the unit of measurement.)

---

**NOTE:** LSI recommends that you leave the patrol read frequency and other patrol read settings at the default values to achieve the best system performance. If you decide to change the values, record the original default value here so you can restore them later, if necessary:

**Patrol Read Frequency:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Continuous Patrolling:** Enabled/Disabled

**Patrol Read Task Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_

---

10. (Optional) Select **Continuous Patrolling** if you want patrol read to run continuously in the background instead of running at periodic intervals. If you select Continuous Patrolling, the time interval field is grayed out.

11. Click **Go** to enable these patrol read options.

---

**NOTE:** Patrol read does not report on its progress while it is running. The patrol read status is reported in the event log only.

---

You can also (optionally) change the patrol read *task rate*. The task rate determines the amount of system resources that are dedicated to a patrol read when it is running. LSI recommends, however, that you leave the patrol read task rate at its default setting. If you raise the task rate above the default, foreground tasks will run more slowly and it may seem that the system is not responding. If you lower the task rate below the default, rebuilds and other background tasks might run very slowly and might not complete within a reasonable time. For more information, about the patrol read task rate, see [Section 8.4, Changing Adjustable Task Rates](#)

## 9.6 Monitoring Virtual Drives

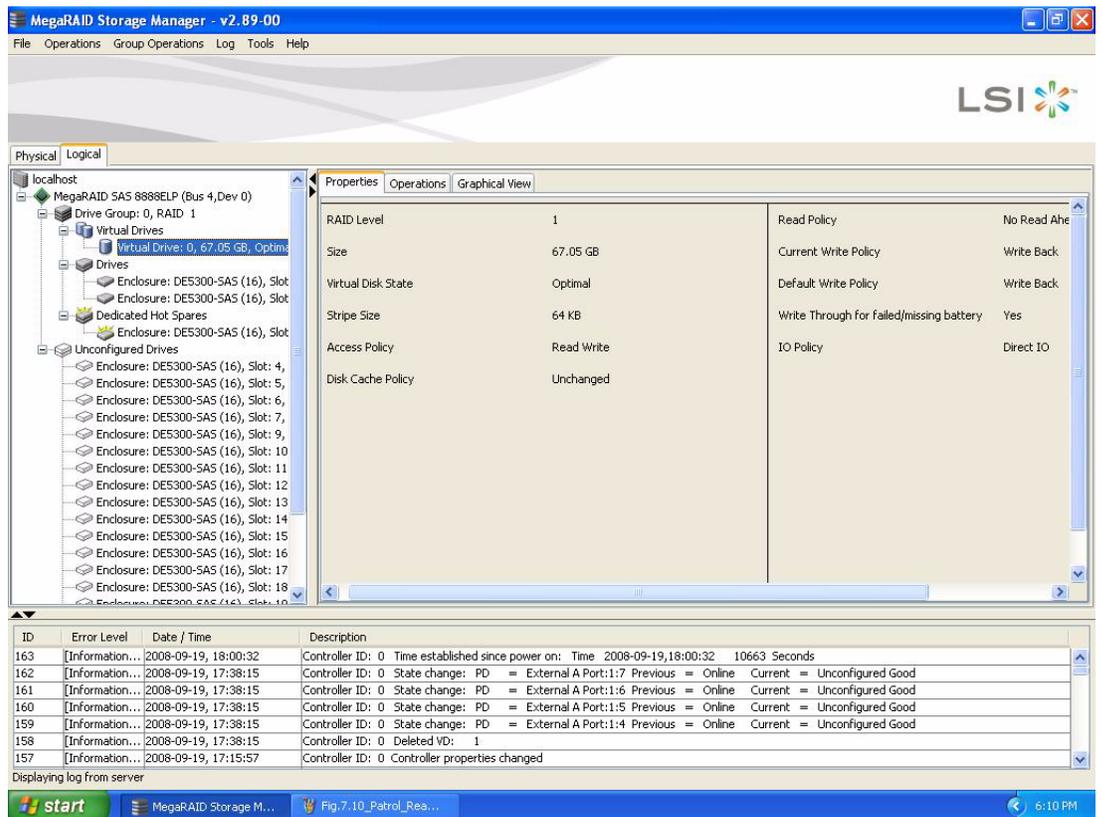
---

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all virtual drives. If a virtual drive is operating normally, the icon looks like this: . If the virtual drive is running in Degraded mode (for example, if a drive has failed), a small yellow circle appears to the right of the icon: . A red circle indicates that the Virtual Drive has failed and data has been lost.

When the Logical tab is selected, the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window shows which drives are used by each virtual drive.

The same drive can be used by multiple virtual drives.

To display complete virtual drive information, click the **Logical** tab in the left panel, click a virtual drive icon in the left panel, and click the **Properties** tab in the right panel. All virtual drive properties are defined in the Glossary. [Figure 128](#) shows the Properties panel for a virtual drive.



**Figure 128: Virtual Drive Properties**

The RAID level, stripe size, and access policy of the virtual drive are set when it is configured.

**NOTE:** You can change the read policy, write policy, and other virtual drive properties by selecting **Operations->Set Virtual Drive Properties**.

If the drives in the virtual drive are in an enclosure, you can identify them by making their LEDs blink. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the virtual drive icon in the left panel.
2. Click the **Operations** tab in the right panel.
3. Select **Locate Virtual Drive** and click **Go**.

The LEDs on the drives in the virtual drive start blinking (except for hot spare drives).

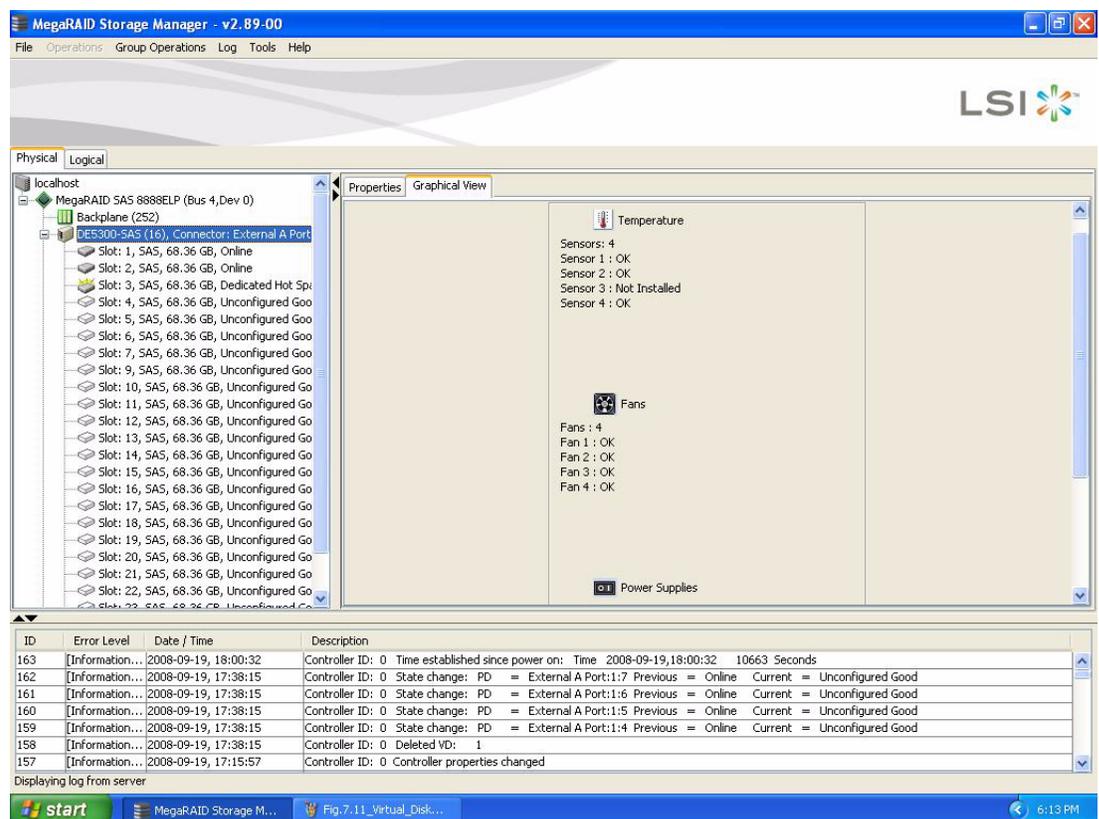
4. To stop the LEDs from blinking, select **Stop Locating Virtual Drive**, and click **Go**.

To show a graphical view of a virtual drive, click a virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Graphical View** tab. In Graphical View, the drive group used for this virtual drive is shaded blue to show how much of the drive group capacity is used by this virtual drive. If part of the drive group is shaded white, this indicates that some of the capacity is used by another virtual drive. In a RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 configuration, two drive groups are used by one virtual drive.

## 9.7 Monitoring Enclosures

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all enclosures connected to the server by selecting the **Physical** tab in the left panel. If an enclosure is operating normally, the icon looks like this: . If the enclosure is not functioning normally—for example, if a fan has failed—a small yellow or red circle appears to the right of the icon.

Information about the enclosure appears in the right panel when you select the **Properties** tab. [Figure 129](#) shows the more complete enclosure information that is displayed when you select the **Graphical View** tab.



**Figure 129: Enclosure Information – Graphical View**

The display in the center of the screen shows how many slots of the enclosure are actually populated by drives, and the lights on the drives show the drive status. The information on the right shows you the status of the temperature sensors, fans, and power supplies in the enclosure.

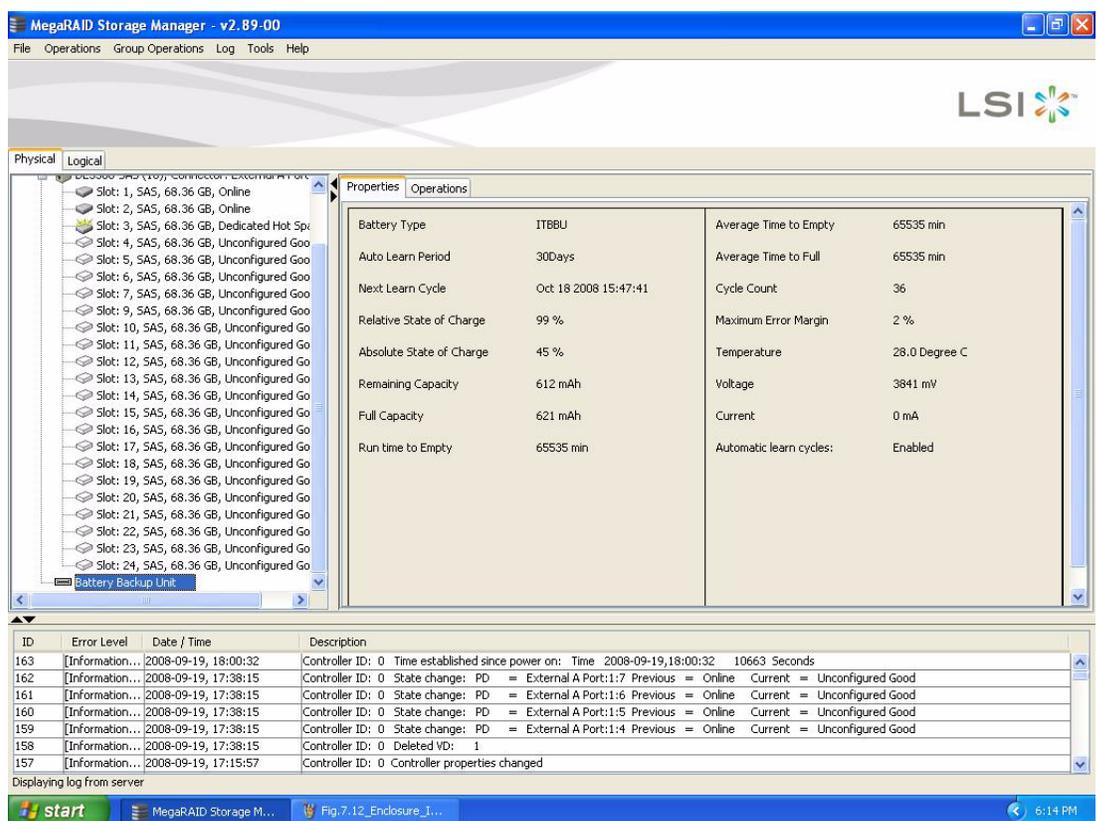
## 9.8 Monitoring Battery Backup Units

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can monitor the status of all of the BBUs connected to controllers in the server. If a BBU is operating normally, the icon looks like this: . If it has failed, a red dot appears next to the icon.

To show the properties for a BBU, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **Physical** tab on the main menu to open the physical view.
2. Select the BBU icon in the left panel.
3. Click the **Properties** tab.

The BBU properties, such as the battery type, temperature, and voltage, appear, as shown in Figure 130.



The screenshot shows the MegaRAID Storage Manager v2.89-00 interface. The left pane shows a tree view of storage slots, with 'Battery Backup Unit' selected. The right pane displays the 'Properties' tab for the selected BBU. Below the properties is an event log table.

ID	Error Level	Date / Time	Description
163	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 18:00:32	Controller ID: 0 Time established since power on: Time 2008-09-19,18:00:32 10663 Seconds
162	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 17:38:15	Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:7 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good
161	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 17:38:15	Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:6 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good
160	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 17:38:15	Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:5 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good
159	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 17:38:15	Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:4 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good
158	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 17:38:15	Controller ID: 0 Deleted VD: 1
157	[Information...]	2008-09-19, 17:15:57	Controller ID: 0 Controller properties changed

**Figure 130: Battery Backup Unit Information**

The BBU properties include the following:

- The number of times the BBU has been recharged (Cycle Count)
- The full capacity of the BBU, plus the percentage of its current state of charge, and the estimated time until it will be depleted
- The current BBU temperature, voltage, current, and remaining capacity
- If the battery is charging, the estimated time until it is fully charged

## 9.8.1 Battery Learn Cycle

Learn Cycle is a battery calibration operation performed by the controller periodically to determine the condition of the battery. You can start battery learn cycles manually or automatically. To choose automatic battery learn cycles, enable automatic learn cycles. To choose manual battery learn cycles, disable automatic learn cycles.

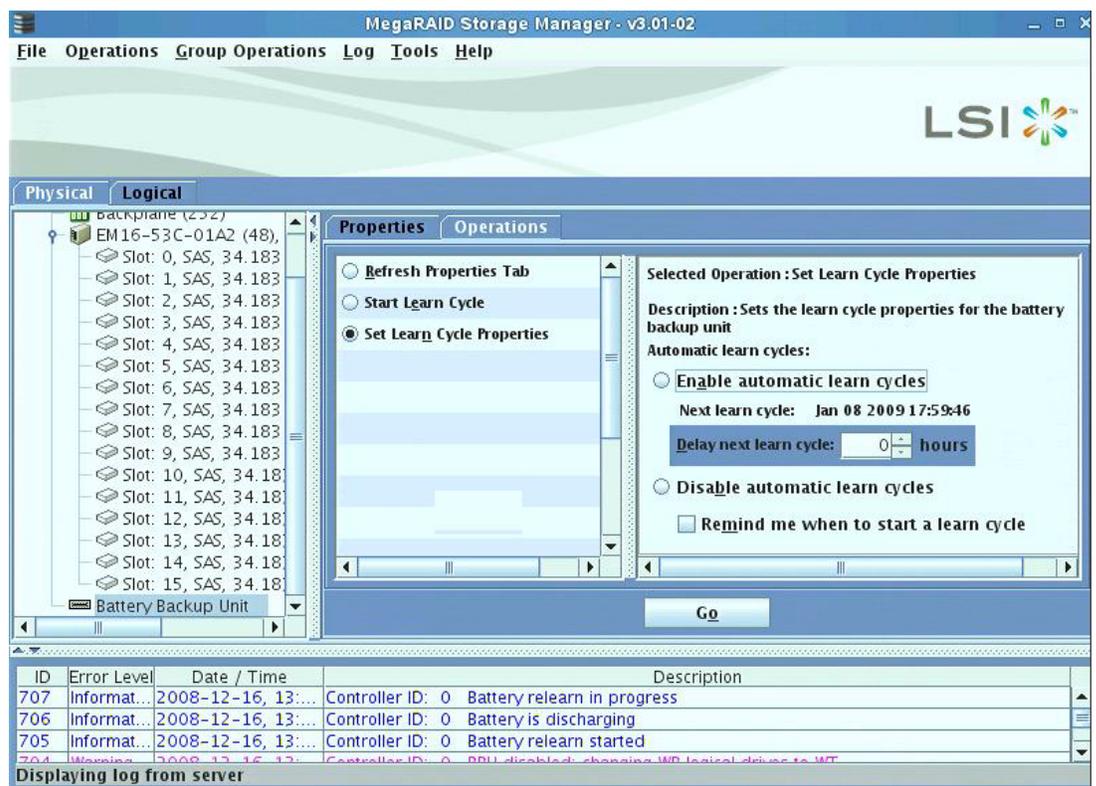
If you enable automatic learn cycles, you can delay the start of the learn cycles for up to 168 hours (7 days). If you disable automatic learn cycles, you can start the learn cycles manually, and you can choose to receive a reminder to start a manual learn cycle.

### 9.8.1.1 Setting Learn Cycle Properties

To set the learn cycle properties, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **Physical** tab to open the physical view.
2. Select the BBU icon in the left panel.
3. Click the **Operations** tab.

The BBU operations appear, as shown in [Figure 131](#).



**Figure 131: Battery Backup Unit Operations**

4. Select **Set Learn Cycle Properties**.

The options appear in the right frame.

5. To enable automatic learn cycles, click **Enable automatic learn cycles** and click **Go**.

You can delay the start of the next learn cycle by up to 7 days (168 hours) using the **Delay next learn cycle** field.

6. To disable automatic learn cycles, click **Disable automatic learn cycles** and click **Go**.

You can start the learn cycles manually. In addition, you can check the box next to the field **Remind me when to start a learn cycle** to receive a reminder to start a manual learn cycle.

### 9.8.1.2 Starting a Learn Cycle Manually

To start the learn cycle properties manually, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **Physical** tab to open the physical view.
2. Select the BBU icon in the left panel.
3. Click the **Operations** tab.

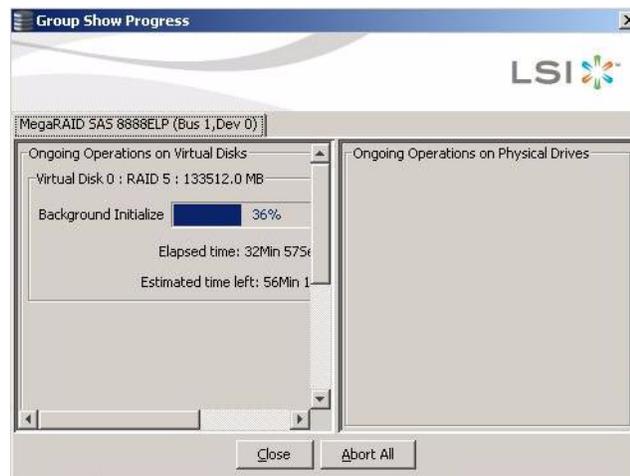
The BBU operations appear, as shown in [Figure 131](#).

4. Click **Start Learn Cycle** and click **Go**.

Another method to use the BBU operations is to right-click the BBU icon to open the operations menu and select **Start Learn Cycle**.

## 9.9 Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes

MegaRAID Storage Manager software allows you to monitor the progress of rebuilds and other lengthy processes in the Group Show Progress window. Open this window, shown in [Figure 132](#), by selecting **Group Operations->Show Progress** on the menu bar.



**Figure 132: Group Show Progress Window**

Operations on virtual drives appear in the left panel of the Group Show Progress window, and operations on drives appear in the right panel.

The following operations appear in this window:

- Background or foreground initialization of a virtual drive
- Rebuild (see [Section 10.4, Rebuilding a Drive](#))
- Modify Drive Group (see [Section 8.7, Changing a Virtual Drive Configuration](#))
- Consistency check (see [Section 9.2, Configuring Alert Notifications](#))

The drive group modification process cannot be aborted. To abort any other ongoing process, click the **Abort** button next to the status indicator. Click **Abort All** to abort all ongoing processes. Click **Close** to close the window.

# Chapter 10

## Maintaining and Managing Storage Configurations

This chapter explains how to use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to maintain and manage storage configurations.

### 10.1 Initializing a Virtual Drive

To initialize a virtual drive after completing the configuration process, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Logical** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the icon of the virtual drive that you want to initialize.
2. Select **Group Operations->Initialize**.  
The Group Initialize dialog box appears.
3. Select the virtual drive(s) to initialize.

**CAUTION:** Initialization erases all data on the virtual drive. Be sure to back up any data you want to keep before you initialize.  
Be sure the operating system is not installed on the virtual drive you are initializing.

4. Select the **Fast Initialization** check box if you want to use this option. If you leave the box unchecked, MegaRAID Storage Manager software will run a Full Initialization on the virtual drive. (For more information, see [Section 8.1.1, Selecting Virtual Drive Settings](#))
5. Click **Start** to begin the initialization.

You can monitor the progress of the initialization. See [Section 9.9, Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes](#) for more information.

### 10.2 Running a Consistency Check

You should periodically run a consistency check on fault-tolerant virtual drives. It is especially important to do this if you suspect that the virtual drive data might be corrupted. Be sure to back up the data before running a consistency check if you think the data might be corrupted.

To run a consistency check, follow these steps:

1. Select **Group Operations->Check Consistency**.  
The Group Consistency Check window appears.
2. Select the virtual drives that you want to check, or click **Select All** to select all virtual drives.
3. Click **Start** to begin.

You can monitor the progress of the consistency check. See [Section 9.9, Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes](#) for more information.

---

**NOTE:** You can also run a consistency check by selecting the virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and selecting the option on the Operation tab in the right panel.

---

### 10.3 Scanning for New Drives

---

MegaRAID Storage Manager software normally detects newly installed drives and displays icons for them in the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. If for some reason MegaRAID Storage Manager software does not detect a new drive (or drives), you can use the Scan for Foreign Config command to find it. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select **Operations->Scan for Foreign Configuration**.

If MegaRAID Storage Manager software detects any new drives, it displays a list of them on the screen.

3. Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the drive detection.

### 10.4 Rebuilding a Drive

---

If a single drive in a RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, or RAID 50 virtual drive fails, the system is protected from data loss. A RAID 6 virtual drive can survive two failed drives. A failed drive must be replaced, and the data on the drive must be rebuilt on a new drive to restore the system to fault tolerance. (You can choose to rebuild the data on the failed drive if the drive is still operational.) If hot spare drives are available, the failed drive is rebuilt automatically without any user intervention.

If a drive has failed, a red circle appears to the right of the drive icon: . A small yellow circle appears to the right of the icon of the virtual drive that uses this drive: . This indicates that the virtual drive is in a degraded state; the data is still safe, but data could be lost if another drive fails.

Follow these steps if you need to rebuild a drive:

1. Right-click the icon of the failed drive, and select **Rebuild**.
2. Click **Yes** when the warning message appears. If the drive is still good, a rebuild will start.

You can monitor the progress of the rebuild in the Group Show Progress window by selecting **Group Operations->Show Progress**. If the drive cannot be rebuilt, an error message appears. Continue with the next step.

3. Shut down the system, disconnect the power cord, and open the computer case.
4. Replace the failed drive with a new drive of equal capacity.
5. Close the computer case, reconnect the power cord, and restart the computer.
6. Restart the MegaRAID Storage Manager software.

When the new drive spins up, the drive icon changes back to normal status, and the rebuild process begins automatically. You can monitor the progress of the rebuild in the Group Show Progress window by selecting **Group Operations->Show Progress**.

## 10.5 Making a Drive Offline or Missing

---

If a drive is currently part of a redundant configuration and you want to use it in another configuration, you can use MegaRAID Storage Manager commands to remove the drive from the first configuration. When you do this, *all data on that drive is lost*.

To remove the drive from the configuration without harming the data on the virtual drive, follow these steps:

1. In the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, right-click the icon of a drive in a redundant virtual drive.
2. Select **Make drive offline** from the pop-up menu. The drive status changes to Offline.
3. Right-click the drive icon again, and select **Mark physical disk as missing**.
4. Select **File->Rescan**. The drive status changes to Unconfigured Good. At this point, the data on this drive is no longer valid.
5. If necessary, create a hot spare drive for the virtual drive from which you have removed the drive. (See [Section 8.3, Adding Hot Spare Drives](#))

When a hot spare is available, the data on the virtual drive will be rebuilt. You can now use the removed drive for another configuration.

---

**CAUTION:** If MegaRAID Storage Manager software detects that a drive in a virtual drive has failed, it makes the drive offline. If this happens, you must remove the drive and replace it. You cannot make the drive usable for another configuration by using the **Mark physical disk as missing** and **Rescan** commands.

---

## 10.6 Upgrading the Firmware

---

MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to easily upgrade the controller firmware. To do this, follow these steps:

1. In the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, click the icon of the controller you need to upgrade.
2. In the right panel, click the **Operations** tab, and select **Flash Firmware**.
3. In the right panel, click **Browse** to locate for the `.rom` update file.
4. After you locate the file, click **OK**.

MegaRAID Storage Manager software displays the version of the existing firmware and the version of the new firmware file.

5. When you are prompted to indicate whether you want to upgrade the firmware, click **Yes**.

The controller is updated with the new firmware code contained in the `.rom` file.

6. Reboot the system after the new firmware is flashed.

The new firmware does not take effect until reboot.



# Appendix A

## Events and Messages

This appendix lists the MegaRAID Storage Manager events that may appear in the event log.

MegaRAID Storage Manager software monitors the activity and performance of all controllers in the workstation and the devices attached to them. When an event occurs, such as the start of an initialization, an event message appears in the log at the bottom of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.

### A.1 Error Levels

Each message that appears in the event log has an error level that indicates the severity of the event, as shown in [Table 91](#).

**Table 91: Event Error Levels**

Error Level	Meaning
Information	Informational message. No user action is necessary.
Warning	Some component may be close to a failure point.
Critical	A component has failed, but the system has not lost data.
Fatal	A component has failed, and data loss has occurred or will occur.

### A.2 Event Messages

[Table 92](#) lists all of the MegaRAID Storage Manager event messages. The event message descriptions include placeholders for specific values that are determined when the event is generated. For example, in message No. 1 in the Event Messages table, "%s" is replaced by the firmware version, which is read from the firmware when the event is generated.

**Table 92: Event Messages**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0000	Information	MegaRAID firmware initialization started (PCI ID %04x/%04x/%04x/%04x)
0x0001	Information	MegaRAID firmware version %s
0x0002	Fatal	Unable to recover cache data from TBBU
0x0003	Information	Cache data recovered from TBBU successfully
0x0004	Information	Configuration cleared
0x0005	Warning	Cluster down; communication with peer lost
0x0006	Information	Virtual drive %s ownership changed from %02x to %02x
0x0007	Information	Alarm disabled by user

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0008	Information	Alarm enabled by user
0x0009	Information	Background initialization rate changed to %d%%
0x000a	Fatal	Controller cache discarded due to memory/battery problems
0x000b	Fatal	Unable to recover cache data due to configuration mismatch
0x000c	Information	Cache data recovered successfully
0x000d	Fatal	Controller cache discarded due to firmware version incompatibility
0x000e	Information	Consistency Check rate changed to %d%%
0x000f	Fatal	Fatal firmware error: %s
0x0010	Information	Factory defaults restored
0x0011	Information	Flash downloaded image corrupt
0x0012	Critical	Flash erase error
0x0013	Critical	Flash timeout during erase
0x0014	Critical	Flash error
0x0015	Information	Flashing image: %s
0x0016	Information	Flash of new firmware image(s) complete
0x0017	Critical	Flash programming error
0x0018	Critical	Flash timeout during programming
0x0019	Critical	Flash chip type unknown
0x001a	Critical	Flash command set unknown
0x001b	Critical	Flash verify failure
0x001c	Information	Flush rate changed to %d seconds
0x001d	Information	Hibernate command received from host
0x001e	Information	Event log cleared
0x001f	Information	Event log wrapped
0x0020	Fatal	Multi-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s)
0x0021	Warning	Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s)
0x0022	Fatal	Not enough controller memory
0x0023	Information	Patrol Read complete
0x0024	Information	Patrol Read paused
0x0025	Information	Patrol Read Rate changed to %d%%
0x0026	Information	Patrol Read resumed
0x0027	Information	Patrol Read started
0x0028	Information	Rebuild rate changed to %d%%
0x0029	Information	Drive group modification rate changed to %d%%
0x002a	Information	Shutdown command received from host
0x002b	Information	Test event: %s
0x002c	Information	Time established as %s; (%d seconds since power on)

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x002d	Information	User entered firmware debugger
0x002e	Warning	Background Initialization aborted on %s
0x002f	Warning	Background Initialization corrected medium error (%s at %lx
0x0030	Information	Background Initialization completed on %s
0x0031	Fatal	Background Initialization completed with uncorrectable errors on %s
0x0032	Fatal	Background Initialization detected uncorrectable double medium errors (%s at %lx on %s)
0x0033	Critical	Background Initialization failed on %s
0x0034	Progress	Background Initialization progress on %s is %s
0x0035	Information	Background Initialization started on %s
0x0036	Information	Policy change on %s from %s to %s
0x0038	Warning	Consistency Check aborted on %s
0x0039	Warning	Consistency Check corrected medium error (%s at %lx
0x003a	Information	Consistency Check done on %s
0x003b	Information	Consistency Check done with corrections on %s
0x003c	Fatal	Consistency Check detected uncorrectable double medium errors (%s at %lx on %s)
0x003d	Critical	Consistency Check failed on %s
0x003e	Fatal	Consistency Check completed with uncorrectable data on %s
0x003f	Warning	Consistency Check found inconsistent parity on %s at strip %lx
0x0040	Warning	Consistency Check inconsistency logging disabled on %s (too many inconsistencies)
0x0041	Progress	Consistency Check progress on %s is %s
0x0042	Information	Consistency Check started on %s
0x0043	Warning	Initialization aborted on %s
0x0044	Critical	Initialization failed on %s
0x0045	Progress	Initialization progress on %s is %s
0x0046	Information	Fast initialization started on %s
0x0047	Information	Full initialization started on %s
0x0048	Information	Initialization complete on %s
0x0049	Information	LD Properties updated to %s (from %s)
0x004a	Information	Drive group modification complete on %s
0x004b	Fatal	Drive group modification of %s stopped due to unrecoverable errors
0x004c	Fatal	Reconstruct detected uncorrectable double medium errors (%s at %lx on %s at %lx)
0x004d	Progress	Drive group modification progress on %s is %s
0x004e	Information	Drive group modification resumed on %s

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x004f	Fatal	Drive group modification resume of %s failed due to configuration mismatch
0x0050	Information	Modifying drive group started on %s
0x0051	Information	State change on %s from %s to %s
0x0052	Information	Drive Clear aborted on %s
0x0053	Critical	Drive Clear failed on %s (Error %02x)
0x0054	Progress	Drive Clear progress on %s is %s
0x0055	Information	Drive Clear started on %s
0x0056	Information	Drive Clear completed on %s
0x0057	Warning	Error on %s (Error %02x)
0x0058	Information	Format complete on %s
0x0059	Information	Format started on %s
0x005a	Critical	Hot Spare SMART polling failed on %s (Error %02x)
0x005b	Information	Drive inserted: %s
0x005c	Warning	Drive %s is not supported
0x005d	Warning	Patrol Read corrected medium error on %s at %lx
0x005e	Progress	Patrol Read progress on %s is %s
0x005f	Fatal	Patrol Read found an uncorrectable medium error on %s at %lx
0x0060	Critical	Predictive failure: CDB: %s
0x0061	Fatal	Patrol Read puncturing bad block on %s at %lx
0x0062	Information	Rebuild aborted by user on %s
0x0063	Information	Rebuild complete on %s
0x0064	Information	Rebuild complete on %s
0x0065	Critical	Rebuild failed on %s due to source drive error
0x0066	Critical	Rebuild failed on %s due to target drive error
0x0067	Progress	Rebuild progress on %s is %s
0x0068	Information	Rebuild resumed on %s
0x0069	Information	Rebuild started on %s
0x006a	Information	Rebuild automatically started on %s
0x006b	Critical	Rebuild stopped on %s due to loss of cluster ownership
0x006c	Fatal	Reassign write operation failed on %s at %lx
0x006d	Fatal	Unrecoverable medium error during rebuild on %s at %lx
0x006e	Information	Corrected medium error during recovery on %s at %lx
0x006f	Fatal	Unrecoverable medium error during recovery on %s at %lx
0x0070	Information	Drive removed: %s
0x0071	Warning	Unexpected sense: %s, CDB%s, Sense: %s
0x0072	Information	State change on %s from %s to %s
0x0073	Information	State change by user on %s from %s to %s

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0074	Warning	Redundant path to %s broken
0x0075	Information	Redundant path to %s restored
0x0076	Information	Dedicated Hot Spare Drive %s no longer useful due to deleted drive group
0x0077	Critical	SAS topology error: Loop detected
0x0078	Critical	SAS topology error: Unaddressable device
0x0079	Critical	SAS topology error: Multiple ports to the same SAS address
0x007a	Critical	SAS topology error: Expander error
0x007b	Critical	SAS topology error: SMP timeout
0x007c	Critical	SAS topology error: Out of route entries
0x007d	Critical	SAS topology error: Index not found
0x007e	Critical	SAS topology error: SMP function failed
0x007f	Critical	SAS topology error: SMP CRC error
0x0080	Critical	SAS topology error: Multiple subtractive
0x0081	Critical	SAS topology error: Table to table
0x0082	Critical	SAS topology error: Multiple paths
0x0083	Fatal	Unable to access device %s
0x0084	Information	Dedicated Hot Spare created on %s (%s)
0x0085	Information	Dedicated Hot Spare %s disabled
0x0086	Critical	Dedicated Hot Spare %s no longer useful for all drive groups
0x0087	Information	Global Hot Spare created on %s (%s)
0x0088	Information	Global Hot Spare %s disabled
0x0089	Critical	Global Hot Spare does not cover all drive groups
0x008a	Information	Created %s}
0x008b	Information	Deleted %s}
0x008c	Information	Marking LD %s inconsistent due to active writes at shutdown
0x008d	Information	Battery Present
0x008e	Warning	Battery Not Present
0x008f	Information	New Battery Detected
0x0090	Information	Battery has been replaced
0x0091	Critical	Battery temperature is high
0x0092	Warning	Battery voltage low
0x0093	Information	Battery started charging
0x0094	Information	Battery is discharging
0x0095	Information	Battery temperature is normal
0x0096	Fatal	Battery needs to be replacement, SOH Bad
0x0097	Information	Battery relearn started
0x0098	Information	Battery relearn in progress

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0099	Information	Battery relearn completed
0x009a	Critical	Battery relearn timed out
0x009b	Information	Battery relearn pending: Battery is under charge
0x009c	Information	Battery relearn postponed
0x009d	Information	Battery relearn will start in 4 days
0x009e	Information	Battery relearn will start in 2 day
0x009f	Information	Battery relearn will start in 1 day
0x00a0	Information	Battery relearn will start in 5 hours
0x00a1	Information	Battery removed
0x00a2	Information	Current capacity of the battery is below threshold
0x00a3	Information	Current capacity of the battery is above threshold
0x00a4	Information	Enclosure (SES) discovered on %s
0x00a5	Information	Enclosure (SAFTE) discovered on %s
0x00a6	Critical	Enclosure %s communication lost
0x00a7	Information	Enclosure %s communication restored
0x00a8	Critical	Enclosure %s fan %d failed
0x00a9	Information	Enclosure %s fan %d inserted
0x00aa	Critical	Enclosure %s fan %d removed
0x00ab	Critical	Enclosure %s power supply %d failed
0x00ac	Information	Enclosure %s power supply %d inserted
0x00ad	Critical	Enclosure %s power supply %d removed
0x00ae	Critical	Enclosure %s SIM %d failed
0x00af	Information	Enclosure %s SIM %d inserted
0x00b0	Critical	Enclosure %s SIM %d removed
0x00b1	Warning	Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d below warning threshold
0x00b2	Critical	Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d below error threshold
0x00b3	Warning	Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d above warning threshold
0x00b4	Critical	Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d above error threshold
0x00b5	Critical	Enclosure %s shutdown
0x00b6	Warning	Enclosure %s not supported; too many enclosures connected to port
0x00b7	Critical	Enclosure %s firmware mismatch
0x00b8	Warning	Enclosure %s sensor %d bad
0x00b9	Critical	Enclosure %s phy %d bad
0x00ba	Critical	Enclosure %s is unstable
0x00bb	Critical	Enclosure %s hardware error
0x00bc	Critical	Enclosure %s not responding

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x00bd	Information	SAS/SATA mixing not supported in enclosure; Drive %s disabled
0x00be	Information	Enclosure (SES) hotplug on %s was detected, but is not supported
0x00bf	Information	Clustering enabled
0x00c0	Information	Clustering disabled
0x00c1	Information	Drive too small to be used for auto-rebuild on %s
0x00c2	Information	BBU enabled; changing WT virtual drives to WB
0x00c3	Warning	BBU disabled; changing WB virtual drives to WT
0x00c4	Warning	Bad block table on drive %s is 80% full
0x00c5	Fatal	Bad block table on drive %s is full; unable to log block %lx
0x00c6	Information	Consistency Check Aborted due to ownership loss on %s
0x00c7	Information	Background Initialization (BGI) Aborted Due to Ownership Loss on %s
0x00c8	Critical	Battery/charger problems detected; SOH Bad
0x00c9	Warning	Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s); warning threshold exceeded
0x00ca	Critical	Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s); critical threshold exceeded
0x00cb	Critical	Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s); further reporting disabled
0x00cc	Critical	Enclosure %s Power supply %d switched off
0x00cd	Information	Enclosure %s Power supply %d switched on
0x00ce	Critical	Enclosure %s Power supply %d cable removed
0x00cf	Information	Enclosure %s Power supply %d cable inserted
0x00d0	Information	Enclosure %s Fan %d returned to normal
0x00d1	Information	BBU Retention test was initiated on previous boot
0x00d2	Information	BBU Retention test passed
0x00d3	Critical	BBU Retention test failed!
0x00d4	Information	NVRAM Retention test was initiated on previous boot
0x00d5	Information	NVRAM Retention test passed
0x00d6	Critical	NVRAM Retention test failed!
0x00d7	Information	%s test completed %d passes successfully
0x00d8	Critical	%s test FAILED on %d pass. Fail data: errorOffset=%x goodData=%x badData=%x
0x00d9	Information	Self check diagnostics completed
0x00da	Information	Foreign Configuration detected
0x00db	Information	Foreign Configuration imported
0x00dc	Information	Foreign Configuration cleared
0x00dd	Warning	NVRAM is corrupt; reinitializing

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x00de	Warning	NVRAM mismatch occurred
0x00df	Warning	SAS wide port %d lost link on PHY %d
0x00e0	Information	SAS wide port %d restored link on PHY %d
0x00e1	Warning	SAS port %d, PHY %d has exceeded the allowed error rate
0x00e2	Warning	Bad block reassigned on %s at %lx to %lx
0x00e3	Information	Controller Hot Plug detected
0x00e4	Warning	Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d differential detected
0x00e5	Information	Drive test cannot start. No qualifying drives found
0x00e6	Information	Time duration provided by host is not sufficient for self check
0x00e7	Information	Marked Missing for %s on drive group %d row %d
0x00e8	Information	Replaced Missing as %s on drive group %d row %d
0x00e9	Information	Enclosure %s Temperature %d returned to normal
0x00ea	Information	Enclosure %s Firmware download in progress
0x00eb	Warning	Enclosure %s Firmware download failed
0x00ec	Warning	%s is not a certified drive
0x00ed	Information	Dirty cache data discarded by user
0x00ee	Information	Drives missing from configuration at boot
0x00ef	Information	Virtual drives (VDs) missing drives and will go offline at boot: %s
0x00f0	Information	VDs missing at boot: %s
0x00f1	Information	Previous configuration completely missing at boot
0x00f2	Information	Battery charge complete
0x00f3	Information	Enclosure %s fan %d speed changed
0x00f4	Information	Dedicated spare %s imported as global due to missing arrays
0x00f5	Information	%s rebuild not possible as SAS/SATA is not supported in an array
0x00f6	Information	SEP %s has been rebooted as a part of enclosure firmware download. SEP will be unavailable until this process completes.
0x00f7	Information	Inserted PD: %s Info: %s
0x00f8	Information	Removed PD: %s Info: %s
0x00f9	Information	VD %s is now OPTIMAL
0x00fa	Warning	VD %s is now PARTIALLY DEGRADED
0x00fb	Critical	VD %s is now DEGRADED
0x00fc	Fatal	VD %s is now OFFLINE
0x00fd	Warning	Battery requires reconditioning; please initiate a LEARN cycle
0x00fe	Warning	VD %s disabled because RAID-5 is not supported by this RAID key
0x00ff	Warning	VD %s disabled because RAID-6 is not supported by this controller

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0100	Warning	VD %s disabled because SAS drives are not supported by this RAID key
0x0101	Warning	PD missing: %s
0x0102	Warning	Puncturing of LBAs enabled
0x0103	Warning	Puncturing of LBAs disabled
0x0104	Critical	Enclosure %s EMM %d not installed
0x0105	Information	Package version %s
0x0106	Warning	Global affinity Hot Spare %s commissioned in a different enclosure
0x0107	Warning	Foreign configuration table overflow
0x0108	Warning	Partial foreign configuration imported, PDs not imported:%s
0x0109	Information	Connector %s is active
0x010a	Information	Board Revision %s
0x010b	Warning	Command timeout on PD %s, CDB:%s
0x010c	Warning	PD %s reset (Type %02x)
0x010d	Warning	VD bad block table on %s is 80% full
0x010e	Fatal	VD bad block table on %s is full; unable to log block %lx (on %s at %lx)
0x010f	Fatal	Uncorrectable medium error logged for %s at %lx (on %s at %lx)
0x0110	Information	VD medium error corrected on %s at %lx
0x0111	Warning	Bad block table on PD %s is 100% full
0x0112	Warning	VD bad block table on PD %s is 100% full
0x0113	Fatal	Controller needs replacement, IOP is faulty
0x0114	Information	CopyBack started on PD %s from PD %s
0x0115	Information	CopyBack aborted on PD %s and src is PD %s
0x0116	Information	CopyBack complete on PD %s from PD %s
0x0117	Progress	CopyBack progress on PD %s is %s
0x0118	Information	CopyBack resumed on PD %s from %s
0x0119	Information	CopyBack automatically started on PD %s from %s
0x011a	Critical	CopyBack failed on PD %s due to source %s error
0x011b	Warning	Early Power off warning was unsuccessful
0x011c	Information	BBU FRU is %s
0x011d	Information	%s FRU is %s
0x011e	Information	Controller hardware revision ID %s
0x011f	Warning	Foreign import shall result in a backward incompatible upgrade of configuration metadata
0x0120	Information	Redundant path restored for PD %s
0x0121	Warning	Redundant path broken for PD %s
0x0122	Information	Redundant enclosure EMM %s inserted for EMM %s

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0123	Information	Redundant enclosure EMM %s removed for EMM %s
0x0124	Warning	Patrol Read can't be started, as PDs are either not ONLINE, or are in a VD with an active process, or are in an excluded VD
0x0125	Information	Copyback aborted by user on PD %s and src is PD %s
0x0126	Critical	Copyback aborted on hot spare %s from %s, as hot spare needed for rebuild
0x0127	Warning	Copyback aborted on PD %s from PD %s, as rebuild required in the array
0x0128	Fatal	Controller cache discarded for missing or offline VD %s When a VD with cached data goes offline or missing during runtime, the cache for the VD is discarded. Because the VD is offline, the cache cannot be saved.
0x0129	Information	Copyback cannot be started as PD %s is too small for src PD %s
0x012a	Information	Copyback cannot be started on PD %s from PD %s, as SAS/SATA is not supported in an array
0x012b	Information	Microcode update started on PD %s
0x012c	Information	Microcode update completed on PD %s
0x012d	Warning	Microcode update timeout on PD %s
0x012e	Warning	Microcode update failed on PD %s
0x012f	Information	Controller properties changed
0x0130	Information	Patrol Read properties changed
0x0131	Information	CC Schedule properties changed
0x0132	Information	Battery properties changed
0x0133	Warning	Periodic Battery Relearn is pending. Please initiate manual learn cycle as Automatic learn is not enabled
0x0134	Information	Drive security key created
0x0135	Information	Drive security key backed up
0x0136	Information	Drive security key from escrow, verified
0x0137	Information	Drive security key changed
0x0138	Warning	Drive security key, re-key operation failed
0x0139	Warning	Drive security key is invalid
0x013a	Information	Drive security key destroyed
0x013b	Warning	Drive security key from escrow is invalid
0x013c	Information	VD %s is now secured
0x013d	Warning	VD %s is partially secured
0x013e	Information	PD %s security activated
0x013f	Information	PD %s security disabled
0x0140	Information	PD %s is reprovisioned
0x0141	Information	PD %s security key changed
0x0142	Fatal	Security subsystem problems detected for PD %s

**Table 92: Event Messages (Continued)**

Number	Type	Event Text
0x0143	Fatal	Controller cache pinned for missing or offline VD %s
0x0144	Fatal	Controller cache pinned for missing or offline VDs: %s
0x0145	Information	Controller cache discarded by user for VDs: %s
0x0146	Information	Controller cache destaged for VD %s
0x0147	Warning	Consistency Check started on an inconsistent VD %s
0x0148	Warning	Drive security key failure, cannot access secured configuration
0x0149	Warning	Drive security pass phrase from user is invalid
0x014a	Warning	Detected error with the remote battery connector cable
0x014b	Information	Power state change on PD %s from %s to %s
0x014c	Information	Enclosure %s element (SES code 0x%x) status changed
0x014d	Information	PD %s rebuild not possible as HDD/SSD mix is not supported in a drive group
0x014e	Information	Copyback cannot be started on PD %s from %s, as HDD/SSD mix is not supported in a drive group
0x014f	Information	VD bad block table on %s is cleared
0x0150	Caution	SAS topology error: 0x%x



# Appendix B

## Glossary

This appendix provides a glossary for terms used in this document.

<b>access policy</b>	A virtual drive property indicating what kind of access is allowed for a particular virtual drive. The possible values are <i>Read/Write</i> , <i>Read Only</i> , or <i>Blocked</i> .
<b>alarm enabled</b>	A controller property that indicates whether the controller's onboard alarm is enabled.
<b>alarm present</b>	A controller property that indicates whether the controller has an onboard alarm. If present and enabled, the alarm is sounded for certain error conditions.
<b>array</b>	See <i>drive group</i> .
<b>BBU present</b>	A controller property that indicates whether the controller has an onboard battery backup unit to provide power in case of a power failure.
<b>BGI rate</b>	A controller property indicating the rate at which the background initialization of virtual drives will be carried out.
<b>BIOS</b>	Basic Input/Output System. The computer BIOS is stored on a flash memory chip. The BIOS controls communications between the microprocessor and peripheral devices, such as the keyboard and the video controller, and miscellaneous functions, such as system messages.
<b>cache</b>	Fast memory that holds recently accessed data. Use of cache memory speeds subsequent access to the same data. When data is read from or written to main memory, a copy is also saved in cache memory with the associated main memory address. The cache memory software monitors the addresses of subsequent reads to see if the required data is already stored in cache memory. If it is already in cache memory (a cache hit), it is read from cache memory immediately and the main memory read is aborted (or not started). If the data is not cached (a cache miss), it is fetched from main memory and saved in cache memory.
<b>cache flush interval</b>	A controller property that indicates how often the data cache is flushed.
<b>caching</b>	The process of using a high speed memory buffer to speed up a computer system's overall read/write performance. The cache can be accessed at a higher speed than a drive subsystem. To improve read performance, the cache usually contains the most recently accessed data, as well as data from adjacent drive sectors. To improve write performance, the cache may temporarily store data in accordance with its write back policies.
<b>capacity</b>	A property that indicates the amount of storage space on a drive or virtual drive.
<b>coerced capacity</b>	A drive property indicating the capacity to which a drive has been coerced (forced) to make it compatible with other drives that are nominally the same capacity. For example, a 4 Gbyte drive from one manufacturer may be 4,196 Mbytes, and a 4 Gbyte from another manufacturer may be 4,128 Mbytes. These drives could be coerced to a usable capacity of 4,088 Mbytes each for use in a drive group in a storage configuration.

<b>coercion mode</b>	A controller property indicating the capacity to which drives of nominally identical capacity are coerced (forced) to make them usable in a storage configuration.
<b>consistency check</b>	An operation that verifies that all stripes in a virtual drive with a redundant RAID level are consistent and that automatically fixes any errors. For RAID 1 drive groups, this operation verifies correct mirrored data for each stripe.
<b>consistency check rate</b>	The rate at which consistency check operations are run on a computer system.
<b>controller</b>	A chip that controls the transfer of data between the microprocessor and memory or between the microprocessor and a peripheral device such as a drive. RAID controllers perform RAID functions such as striping and mirroring to provide data protection. MegaRAID Storage Manager software runs on LSI SAS controllers.
<b>copyback</b>	<p>The procedure used to copy data from a source drive of a virtual drive to a destination drive that is not a part of the virtual drive. The copyback operation is often used to create or restore a specific physical configuration for a drive group (for example, a specific arrangement of drive group members on the device I/O buses). The copyback operation can be run automatically or manually.</p> <p>Typically, a drive fails or is expected to fail, and the data is rebuilt on a hot spare. The failed drive is replaced with a new drive. Then the data is copied from the hot spare to the new drive, and the hot spare reverts from a rebuild drive to its original hot spare status. The copyback operation runs as a background activity, and the virtual drive is still available online to the host.</p>
<b>current write policy</b>	<p>A virtual drive property that indicates whether the virtual drive currently supports Write Back mode or Write Through mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ In Write Back mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction.</li> <li>■ In Write Through mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.</li> </ul>
<b>default write policy</b>	A virtual drive property indicating whether the default write policy is Write Through or Write Back. In Write Back mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. In Write Through mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.
<b>device ID</b>	A controller or drive property indicating the manufacturer-assigned device ID.
<b>device port count</b>	A controller property indicating the number of ports on the controller.
<b>drive cache policy</b>	A virtual drive property indicating whether the virtual drive cache is enabled, disabled, or unchanged from its previous setting.
<b>drive group</b>	A group of drives attached to a RAID controller on which one or more virtual drives can be created. All virtual drives in the drive group use all of the drives in the drive group.
<b>drive state</b>	<p>A drive property indicating the status of the drive. A drive can be in one of the following states:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Unconfigured Good: A drive accessible to the RAID controller but not configured as a part of a virtual drive or as a hot spare.</li> <li>■ Hot Spare: A drive that is configured as a hot spare.</li> <li>■ Online: A drive that can be accessed by the RAID controller and will be part of the virtual drive.</li> <li>■ Rebuild: A drive to which data is being written to restore full redundancy for a virtual drive.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Failed: A drive that was originally configured as Online or Hot Spare, but on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error.</li> <li>■ Unconfigured Bad: A drive on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error; the drive was Unconfigured Good or the drive could not be initialized.</li> <li>■ Missing: A drive that was Online, but which has been removed from its location.</li> <li>■ Offline: A drive that is part of a virtual drive but which has invalid data as far as the RAID configuration is concerned.</li> <li>■ None: A drive with an unsupported flag set. An Unconfigured Good or Offline drive that has completed the prepare for removal operation.</li> </ul>
<b>drive subsystem</b>	A collection of drives and the hardware that controls them and connects them to one or more controllers. The hardware can include an intelligent controller, or the drives can attach directly to a system I/O bus controller.
<b>drive type</b>	A drive property indicating the characteristics of the drive.
<b>fast initialization</b>	A mode of initialization that quickly writes zeroes to the first and last sectors of the virtual drive. This allows you to immediately start writing data to the virtual drive while the initialization is running in the background.
<b>fault tolerance</b>	The capability of the drive subsystem to undergo a single drive failure per drive group without compromising data integrity and processing capability. LSI SAS RAID controllers provides fault tolerance through redundant drive groups in RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. They also support hot spare drives and the auto-rebuild feature.
<b>firmware</b>	Software stored in read-only memory (ROM) or programmable ROM (PROM). Firmware is often responsible for the behavior of a system when it is first turned on. A typical example would be a monitor program in a system that loads the full operating system from drive or from a network and then passes control to the operating system.
<b>foreign configuration</b>	A RAID configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system. MegaRAID Storage Manager software allows you to import the existing configuration to the RAID controller, or you can clear the configuration so you can create a new one.
<b>formatting</b>	The process of writing a specific value to all data fields on a drive, to map out unreadable or bad sectors. Because most drives are formatted when manufactured, formatting is usually done only if a drive generates many media errors.
<b>hole</b>	In MegaRAID Storage Manager, a <i>hole</i> is a block of empty space in a drive group that can be used to define a virtual drive.
<b>host interface</b>	A controller property indicating the type of interface used by the computer host system: for example, <i>PCIX</i> .
<b>host port count</b>	A controller property indicating the number of host data ports currently in use.
<b>host system</b>	Any computer system on which the controller is installed. Mainframes, workstations, and standalone desktop systems can all be considered host systems.
<b>hot spare</b>	A standby drive that can automatically replace a failed drive in a virtual drive and prevent data from being lost. A hot spare can be dedicated to a single redundant drive group or it can be part of the global hot spare pool for all drive groups controlled by the controller.
	When a drive fails, MegaRAID Storage Manager software automatically uses a hot spare to replace it and then rebuilds the data from the failed drive to the hot spare. Hot spares can be used in RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 storage configurations.

<b>initialization</b>	The process of writing zeros to the data fields of a virtual drive and, in fault-tolerant RAID levels, generating the corresponding parity to put the virtual drive in a Ready state. Initialization erases all previous data on the drives. Drive groups will work without initializing, but they can fail a consistency check because the parity fields have not been generated.
<b>IO policy</b>	A virtual drive property indicating whether Cached I/O or Direct I/O is being used. In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory. In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. (The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.)
<b>learning cycle</b>	A battery calibration operation performed by a RAID controller periodically to determine the condition of the battery.
<b>load-balancing</b>	A method of spreading work between two or more computers, network links, CPUs, drives, or other resources. Load balancing is used to maximize resource use, throughput, or response time.
<b>media error count</b>	A drive property indicating the number of errors that have been detected on the drive media.
<b>migration</b>	The process of moving virtual drives and hot spare drives from one controller to another by disconnecting the drives from one controller and attaching them to another one. The firmware on the new controller will detect and retain the virtual drive information on the drives.
<b>mirroring</b>	The process of providing complete data redundancy with two drives by maintaining an exact copy of one drive's data on the second drive. If one drive fails, the contents of the other drive can be used to maintain the integrity of the system and to rebuild the failed drive.
<b>multipathing</b>	The firmware provides support for detecting and using multiple paths from the RAID controllers to the SAS devices that are in enclosures. Devices connected to enclosures have multiple paths to them. With redundant paths to the same port of a device, if one path fails, another path can be used to communicate between the controller and the device. Using multiple paths with load balancing, instead of a single path, can increase reliability through redundancy.
<b>name</b>	A virtual drive property indicating the user-assigned name of the virtual drive.
<b>non-redundant configuration</b>	A RAID 0 virtual drive with data striped across two or more drives but without drive mirroring or parity. This provides for high data throughput but offers no protection in case of a drive failure.
<b>NVRAM</b>	Acronym for non-volatile random access memory. A storage system that does not lose the data stored on it when power is removed. NVRAM is used to store firmware and configuration data on the RAID controller.
<b>NVRAM present</b>	A controller property indicating whether an NVRAM is present on the controller.
<b>NVRAM size</b>	A controller property indicating the capacity of the controller's NVRAM.
<b>offline</b>	A drive is offline when it is part of a virtual drive but its data is not accessible to the virtual drive.
<b>patrol read</b>	A process that checks the drives in a storage configuration for drive errors that could lead to drive failure and lost data. The patrol read operation can find and sometimes fix any potential problem with drives prior to host access. This enhances overall system performance because error recovery during a normal I/O operation may not be necessary.

<b>patrol read rate</b>	The user-defined rate at which patrol read operations are run on a computer system.
<b>product info</b>	A drive property indicating the vendor-assigned model number of the drive.
<b>product name</b>	A controller property indicating the manufacturing name of the controller.
<b>RAID</b>	A group of multiple, independent drives that provide high performance by increasing the number of drives used for saving and accessing data. A RAID drive group improves input/output (I/O) performance and data availability. The group of drives appears to the host system as a single storage unit or as multiple virtual drives. Data throughput improves because several drives can be accessed simultaneously. RAID configurations also improve data storage availability and fault tolerance. Redundant RAID levels (RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60) provide data protection.
<b>RAID 0</b>	Uses data striping on two or more drives to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that requires no data redundancy.
<b>RAID 00</b>	Uses data striping on two or more drives in a spanned drive group to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that requires no data redundancy.
<b>RAID 1</b>	Uses data mirroring on pairs of drives so that data written to one drive is simultaneously written to the other drive. RAID 1 works well for small databases or other small applications that require complete data redundancy.
<b>RAID 5</b>	Uses data striping and parity data across three or more drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput and data redundancy, especially for applications that require random access.
<b>RAID 6</b>	Uses data striping and parity data across three or more drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput and data redundancy, especially for applications that require random access. RAID 6 can survive the failure of two drives.
<b>RAID 10</b>	A combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1 that uses data striping across two mirrored drive groups. It provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy.
<b>RAID 50</b>	A combination of RAID 0 and RAID 5 that uses data striping across two drive groups with parity data. It provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy.
<b>RAID 60</b>	A combination of RAID 0 and RAID 6 that uses data striping across two drive groups with parity data. It provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy. RAID 60 can survive the failure of two drives in each RAID set in the spanned drive group.
<b>RAID level</b>	A virtual drive property indicating the RAID level of the virtual drive. LSI SAS controllers support RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.
<b>raw capacity</b>	A drive property indicating the actual full capacity of the drive before any coercion mode is applied to reduce the capacity.
<b>read policy</b>	A controller attribute indicating the current Read Policy mode. In Always Read Ahead mode, the controller reads sequentially ahead of requested data and stores the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data. In No Read Ahead mode, read ahead capability is disabled. In Adaptive Read Ahead mode, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to No Read Ahead mode.

<b>rebuild</b>	The regeneration of all data to a replacement drive in a redundant virtual drive after a drive failure. A drive rebuild normally occurs without interrupting normal operations on the affected virtual drive, though some degradation of performance of the drive subsystem can occur.
<b>rebuild rate</b>	The percentage of central processing unit (CPU) resources devoted to rebuilding data onto a new drive after a drive in a storage configuration has failed.
<b>reclaim virtual drive</b>	A method of undoing the configuration of a new virtual drive. If you highlight the virtual drive in the Configuration Wizard and click the <b>Reclaim</b> button, the individual drives are removed from the virtual drive configuration.
<b>reconstruction rate</b>	The user-defined rate at which a drive group modification operation is carried out.
<b>redundancy</b>	A property of a storage configuration that prevents data from being lost when one drive fails in the configuration.
<b>redundant configuration</b>	A virtual drive that has redundant data on drives in the drive group that can be used to rebuild a failed drive. The redundant data can be parity data striped across multiple drives in a drive group, or it can be a complete mirrored copy of the data stored on a second drive. A redundant configuration protects the data in case a drive fails in the configuration.
<b>reversible hot spare</b>	When you use the Replace Member procedure, after data is copied from a hot spare to a new drive, the hot spare reverts from a rebuild drive to its original hot spare status.
<b>revision level</b>	A drive property that indicates the revision level of the drive's firmware.
<b>SAS</b>	Acronym for Serial Attached SCSI. SAS is a serial, point-to-point, enterprise-level device interface that leverages the Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) protocol set. The SAS interface provides improved performance, simplified cabling, smaller connectors, lower pin count, and lower power requirements when compared to parallel SCSI.
<b>SATA</b>	Acronym for Serial Advanced Technology Attachment. A physical storage interface standard. SATA is a serial link that provides point-to-point connections between devices. The thinner serial cables allow for better airflow within the system and permit smaller chassis designs.
<b>SCSI device type</b>	A drive property indicating the type of the device, such as drive.
<b>serial no.</b>	A controller property indicating the manufacturer-assigned serial number.
<b>strip size</b>	The portion of a stripe that resides on a single drive in the drive group.
<b>stripe size</b>	A virtual drive property indicating the length of the interleaved data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. The user can select the stripe size.
<b>striping</b>	A technique used to write data across all drives in a virtual drive. Each stripe consists of consecutive virtual drive data addresses that are mapped in fixed-size units to each drive in the virtual drive using a sequential pattern. For example, if the virtual drive includes five drives, the stripe writes data to drives one through five without repeating any of the drives. The amount of space consumed by a stripe is the same on each drive. Striping by itself does not provide data redundancy. Striping in combination with parity does provide data redundancy.
<b>subvendor ID</b>	A controller property that lists additional vendor ID information about the controller.

<b>uncorrectable error count</b>	A controller property that lists the number of uncorrectable errors detected on drives connected to the controller. If the error count reaches a certain level, a drive will be marked as failed.
<b>vendor ID</b>	A controller property indicating the vendor-assigned ID number of the controller.
<b>vendor info</b>	A drive property listing the name of the vendor of the drive.
<b>virtual drive</b>	A storage unit created by a RAID controller from one or more drives. Although a virtual drive may be created from several drives, it is seen by the operating system as a single drive. Depending on the RAID level used, the virtual drive may retain redundant data in case of a drive failure.
<b>virtual drive state</b>	A virtual drive property indicating the condition of the virtual drive. Examples include Optimal and Degraded.
<b>write-back</b>	<p>In Write-Back Caching mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a drive write transaction. Data is written to the drive subsystem in accordance with policies set up by the controller.</p> <p>These policies include the amount of dirty/clean cache lines, the number of cache lines available, and elapsed time from the last cache flush.</p>
<b>write policy</b>	<i>See Default Write Policy.</i>
<b>write-through</b>	In Write-Through Caching mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data and has completed the write transaction to the drive.

